

User's Guide

Quantum DXi V-Series

with DXi 2.2.1 Software



6-67612-03 Rev A

Quantum DXi V-Series User's Guide, 6-67612-03 Rev A, July 2013, Product of USA.

This document is for DXi 2.2.1 Software.

Quantum Corporation provides this publication "as is" without warranty of any kind, either express or implied, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Quantum Corporation may revise this publication from time to time without notice.

COPYRIGHT STATEMENT

© 2013 Quantum Corporation. All rights reserved.

Your right to copy this manual is limited by copyright law. Making copies or adaptations without prior written authorization of Quantum Corporation is prohibited by law and constitutes a punishable violation of the law.

TRADEMARK STATEMENT

Quantum, the Quantum Logo, Backup. Recovery. Archive. It's What We Do., Be Certain, Be Quantum Certain, DLT, the DLT Logo, DLTSage, DLTtape, the DLTtape Logo, DXi, DXi Accent, Dynamic Powerdown, FastSense, FlexLink, GoProtect, GoVault, iLayer, Lattus, MediaShield, Optyon, Pocket-sized., Well-armored., Preserving the World's Most Important Data. Yours., Q-Cloud, Quantum Certain, Quantum Certainty, Quantum vmPRO, Scalar, SDLT, SiteCare, SmartVerify, StorageCare, StorNext, Super DLTtape, SuperLoader, and Vision are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Quantum Corporation and its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Products mentioned herein are for identification purposes only and may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies. All other brand names or trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Quantum specifications are subject to change.

Contents

Preface

xvii

Chapter 1	DXi V-Series System Description	1
	Overview	1
	Features and Benefits	3
	What's New in DXi 2.2.1 Software Enhancements in Previous Releases	
	Data Reduction	7
	Space Reclamation	8
	Remote Replication	9
	Storage Presentation	10
	DXi Advanced Reporting	12
	Network Configuration	13

Chapter 2	DXi V-Series Remote Management	15
	Accessing Remote Management	
	The Remote Management Console	
Chapter 3	DXi V-Series Configuration Wizards	25

NAS W	/izard
	Step 5: Add Share 31 Step 6: Confirm 32
OST W	Tizard33Step 1: About34Step 2: Add Storage Servers34Step 3: Add LSUs36Step 4: Add Users37Step 5: Confirm38Step 6: Download OST Client Plug-In39
Replica	ation Wizard40Step 1: About41Step 2: System41Step 3: NAS Shares43Step 4: Confirm45
Email /	Alerts Wizard46Step 1: About46Step 2: Server47Step 3: Recipients48Step 4: Confirm49
Suppo	rt Wizard

Step 2: Registration	 	 	51
Step 3: System Log	 	 	52
Step 4: Licensed Features	 	 	53

Received Snapshots.86Recovery Jobs92Failback Jobs.93Directory/File Based.94

Chapter 4	DXi V-Series Home Page 5	57
	DXi V-Series System Overview	8
	Disk Usage Overview	;9
	Data Reduction Statistics Overview	5 1
	Replication Overview	52
	Current Activity Overview6	55
Chapter 5	DXi V-Series Replication 6	59
	Understanding Data Replication	70 71
	Performing Data Replication	73 74 75
	Send NAS 7 Shares Eligible for Replication 7 Enabling Replication For a Share. 8 Configuring a Source Share for Directory/File Based 8 Replication 8 Replication 8 Replication 8 Replication 8 Replication 8 Replication 8	78 30 31 33
	Synchronizing a Share	

	Actions	98 99
	Reports	. 100
Chapter 6	DXi V-Series Status	103
	Performance	. 104 . 105
	Disk Usage Available Used Data Before Reduction Data After Reduction	. 107 . 108 . 108
	DXi Accent Status	. 109
	Activity Log . Viewing Logged Activities. Enabling or Disabling Activity Logging . Deleting Logged Activities . Downloading the Activity Log.	. 112 . 113 . 114
Chapter 7	DXi V-Series Alerts	115
	Admin Alerts	. 115
	Service Tickets	. 117 . 118
Chapter 8	DXi V-Series Configuration	127
-	NAS	. 128 . 135

	Advanced Setting1	44
	ion	45
		52 55 63 69 72 75 79
:	er	82
, 		93 11
I	tions	21
	s	43

Chapter 9

DXi V-Series Utilities

247

-	ics
-	
Space R	clamation
	eys

	Adding a License Key	261
	Secure Shred	263
	Software Upgrade	
	Reboot & Shutdown	270
Appendix A	Troubleshooting	273
Appendix A	Troubleshooting DXi V-Series Status and Problem Reporting	
Appendix A	•	

Glossary

Figures

Figure 1 NAS Backup using CIFS and NFS 11
Figure 2 OpenStorage (OST) Example 12
Figure 3 Login Window 17
Figure 4 Home Page 18
Figure 5 System Banner 20
Figure 6 Main Menu23
Figure 7 Remote Management Pages Map
Figure 8 Wizards Menu 26
Figure 9 NAS Wizard: About 27
Figure 10 NAS Wizard: Protocol. 28
Figure 11 NAS Wizard: Windows 29
Figure 12 NAS Wizard: Share Access
Figure 13 NAS Wizard: Add Share 32
Figure 14 NAS Wizard: Confirm
Figure 15 OST Wizard: About
Figure 16 OST Wizard: Add Storage Servers
Figure 17 OST Wizard: Add LSUs 37
Figure 18 OST Wizard: Add Users

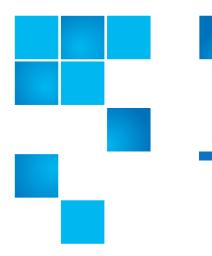
Figure 19	OST Wizard: Confirm	39
Figure 20	OST Wizard: Download OST Client Plug-in	40
Figure 21	Replication Wizard: About	41
Figure 22	Replication Wizard: System	43
Figure 23	Replication Wizard: NAS Shares	45
Figure 24	Replication Wizard: Confirm	45
Figure 25	Email Alerts Wizard: About	46
Figure 26	Email Alerts Wizard: Server	47
Figure 27	Email Alerts Wizard: Recipients	49
Figure 28	Email Alerts Wizard: Confirm	50
Figure 29	Support Wizard: About	51
Figure 30	Support Wizard: Registration	52
Figure 31	Support Wizard: System Log	53
Figure 32	Support Wizard: Licensed Features	55
Figure 33	Home Page	58
Figure 34	DXi V-Series System Overview	59
Figure 35	Disk Usage Overview	61
Figure 36	Data Reduction Statistics Overview	62
Figure 37	Replication Overview	65
Figure 38	Current Activity Overview	67
Figure 39	Send NAS Page	77
Figure 40	Edit NAS Share Page	81
Figure 41	Directory/File Based Queue	84
Figure 42	Received Snapshots Page	86
Figure 43	Recovered Share Name Page	88
Figure 44	Failback Target Page	90
Figure 45	Recovery Jobs Page	92
Figure 46	Failback Jobs Page	93
Figure 47	Directory/File Based Page	94

Figure 48	Edit Share Settings Page96
Figure 49	Unpack Queue
Figure 50	Actions Page98
Figure 51	Reports Page
Figure 52	Inline Page
Figure 53	Ethernet Page105
Figure 54	CPU Page
Figure 55	Disk Usage Page
Figure 56	Accent Status Page110
Figure 57	Activity Log Page
Figure 58	Activity Log View Controls
Figure 59	Activity Log View Controls
Figure 60	Admin Alerts Page
Figure 61	Service Tickets Page
Figure 62	Ticket Details
Figure 63	Recommended Actions122
Figure 64	Ticket Analysis
Figure 65	Email Ticket Information124
Figure 66	NAS Summary Page
Figure 67	Add NAS Share Page131
Figure 68	Edit NAS Share & Replication Settings Page133
Figure 69	Windows Domain Page
Figure 70	Share Access Page (Windows Workgroup)138
Figure 71	Share Access Page (Active Directory)
Figure 72	Add Workgroup User Page140
Figure 73	Add Share Administrator Page
Figure 74	Edit Workgroup User Page
Figure 75	Advanced Setting Page144
Figure 76	Replication Send Page 146

Figure 77 Replication Receive Page 149
Figure 78 Setting Up OST Automatic Image Replication
Figure 79 Storage Servers Page
Figure 80 Add Storage Server Page 158
Figure 81 Edit Storage Server Page161
Figure 82 LSU Page
Figure 83 Add Logical Storage Unit Page
Figure 84 Edit Logical Storage Unit Page167
Figure 85 Manage Users Page 170
Figure 86 Add User Credential171
Figure 87 Edit User Credentials 172
Figure 88 Manage Remote Users Page
Figure 89 Add Remote AIR Credential
Figure 90 Edit Remote Credentials175
Figure 91 Target IP Mapping Page176
Figure 92 Add Target Data IP Mapping 177
Figure 93 Edit Target Data IP Mapping 178
Figure 94 Accent Page 179
Figure 95 Scheduler Calendar Page 182
Figure 96 Scheduler View Controls
Figure 97 Adding a New Event
Figure 98 Scheduler NAS Page 192
Figure 99 Network Configuration
Figure 100 Network Page: General
Figure 101 Network Page: Bonding Details
Figure 102 Network Page: Interface Details
Figure 103 Network Page: IP Address Table
Figure 104 Network Page: Routing Details
Figure 105 Interface Routing: Example 1

Figure 106	Interface Routing: Example 2
Figure 107	Interface Routing: Example 3210
Figure 108	Date & Time Page212
Figure 109	Web & CLI Passwords Page214
Figure 110	SSL Page
Figure 111	Install New Certificate Page
Figure 112	Login Session Page220
Figure 113	Security Notice Page
Figure 114	Recipients Page
Figure 115	Add Email Recipient Page224
Figure 116	Edit Email Recipient Page
Figure 117	Server Page
Figure 118	Email Test Page
Figure 119	Recipients Page
Figure 120	On Demand Page231
Figure 121	Destinations Page233
Figure 122	Add Trap Destination Page234
Figure 123	Edit Trap Destination Page
Figure 124	Community Page
Figure 125	Add SNMP Community Page
Figure 126	Edit SNMP Community Page240
Figure 127	SNMP Test Page
Figure 128	Company Page
Figure 129	Primary and Secondary Pages244
Figure 130	System Diag File Page249
Figure 131	General Page
Figure 132	Status Page
Figure 133	Edit Healthcheck Page
Figure 134	Performance Page254

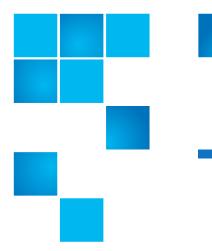
Figure 135	Settings Page255
Figure 136	Disk Analyzer Page256
Figure 137	Space Reclamation Page258
Figure 138	License Keys Page260
Figure 139	Secure Shred Page
Figure 140	Secure Shred Mode Interface266
Figure 141	Software Upgrade Page267
Figure 142	Activate/Remove Software Image
Figure 143	Reboot & Shutdown Page270



Tables

Table 1	Start-up Problems	275
Table 2	Ethernet Network Problems	276
Table 3	Replication Problems	277

Tables



Preface

This manual introduces the Quantum DXi V-Series virtual disk backup solution and discusses:

- System operations
- Configuration
- Web interface
- Basic troubleshooting

Audience	This manual is written for DXi V-Series operators and administrators.
	Note: It is useful for the audience to have a basic understanding of Windows, Linux, and UNIX® as well as backup/recovery systems.
Document Organization	Following is a brief description of chapter contents.
	 <u>Chapter 1, DXi V-Series System Description</u> provides an overview of the DXi V-Series.
	 <u>Chapter 2, DXi V-Series Remote Management</u> discusses using the DXi V-Series remote management console to control the system remotely.

	• <u>Chapter 3, DXi V-Series Configuration Wizards</u> discusses the wizards that provide guidance for setting up the DXi V-Series.
	 <u>Chapter 4, DXi V-Series Home Page</u> discusses the information that appears on the Home page of the remote management console.
	• <u>Chapter 5, DXi V-Series Replication</u> discusses the remote replication capabilities of the DXi V-Series.
	 <u>Chapter 6, DXi V-Series Status</u> discusses DXi V-Series status information.
	 <u>Chapter 7, DXi V-Series Alerts</u> discusses DXi V-Series alert information and service tickets.
	• <u>Chapter 8, DXi V-Series Configuration</u> discusses configuration of the DXi V-Series.
	 <u>Chapter 9, DXi V-Series Utilities</u> discusses DXi V-Series utilities such as diagnostic tools and rebooting the system.
	 <u>Appendix A, Troubleshooting</u> discusses problems you may encounter during the setup and operation of the DXi V-Series.
	• <u>Glossary</u> provides definitions of terms used in this guide.
Notational Conventions	This manual uses the following conventions:
	Note: Note emphasizes important information related to the main topic.
	Caution: Caution indicates potential hazards to equipment or data.
	WARNING: Warning indicates potential hazards to personal safety.
	 Data sizes are reported in base 1000 rather than base 1024. For example:

- 1 MB = 1,000,000 bytes
- 1 GB = 1,000,000,000 bytes
- 1 TB = 1,000,000,000,000 bytes

Product Safety Statements	Quantum will not be held liable for damage arising from unauthorized use of the product. The user assumes all risk in this aspect. This unit is engineered and manufactured to meet all safety and regulatory requirements. Be aware that improper use may result in bodily injury, damage to the equipment, or interference with other
	equipment.
	WARNING: Before operating this product, read all instructions and warnings in this document and in the system, safety, and regulatory guide.
	警告 在使用本产品之前,请先阅读本文档及系统、安全和法规信息指南中所有的说明和 警告信息。
	警告 操作本產品前,請先閱讀本文件及系統、安全與法規資訊指南中的指示與 警告說明。 ————————————————————————————————————
	ADVERSAL Læs alle instruktioner og advarsler i dette dokument og i Vejledning om system- sikkerheds- og lovgivningsoplysninger, før produktet betjenes.
	AVERTISSEMENT Avant d'utiliser ce produit, lisez la totalité des instructions et avertissements de ce document et du <i>Guide d'informations sur le système, la sécurité et la réglementation.</i>
	Lesen Sie vor der Verwendung dieses Produkts alle Anweisungen und Warnhinweise in diesem Dokument und im System, Safety, and Regulatory Information Guide (Info-Handbuch: System, Sicherheit und Richtlinien).
	לפני ההפעלה של מוצר זה, קרא את כל ההוראות והאזהרות הכלולות במסמך זה וכן ב <i>מדריך מידע בנושאי מערכת, בטיחות ותקינה</i>

警	T	を使用する前に、本文書、および『システム、安全、規制に関す イド』に記載しているすべての警告と指示をお読みください。
3		을 작동하기 전에 이 문서 및 시스템, 안전, 및 규제 정보 안내서에 모든 지침과 경고 표지를 숙지하십시오.
ПРІ	ЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ	Перед началом эксплуатации данного устройства ознакомьтесь во всеми инструкциями и предупреждениями, приведенными в данном документе и в Справочном руководстве по устройству, технике безопасности и действующим нормативам.
AD		ntes de utilizar este producto, lea todas las instrucciones y advertencias en iste documento y en la Guia informativa sobre sistema, seguridad y normas.
VA		a anvisningar och varningar i detta dokument och i System, säkerhet och an myndigheter - Informationshandbok innan denna produkt tas i bruk.

Related Documents

The following Quantum documents are also available for the DXi V-Series:

Document No.	Document Title	Document Description
6-00618	<i>System Safety and Regulatory Information - Quantum Products</i>	Lists all safety and regulatory information for all Quantum products.

Document No.	Document Title	Document Description
6-67079	<i>DXi-Series NetBackup and Backup Exec OST Configuration Guide</i>	Provides information for setting up the DXi V-Series for OST operation with NetBackup and Backup Exec.
6-67081	<i>DXi-Series Command Line Interface (CLI) Guide</i>	Provides information on the DXi V-Series command line interface.
6-67353	<i>DXi Advanced Reporting User's Guide</i>	Provides information about using DXi Advanced Reporting features.

For the most up-to-date documentation for the DXi V-Series, go to:

http://www.quantum.com/dxi-vseriesdocs

Note: For DXi V1000 Standard Edition users, documentation, community support, and other resources are available through Forum V (<u>http://www.quantum.com/forumv</u>), Quantum's online support forum for virtualization products.

Contacts

Quantum company contacts are listed below.

Quantum Corporate Headquarters

To order documentation on the DXi V-Series or other products contact:

Quantum Corporation *(Corporate Headquarters)* 1650 Technology Drive, Suite 700 San Jose, CA 95110-1382

Quantum Home Page

Visit the Quantum home page at:

http://www.quantum.com

Getting More Information or Help

StorageCare[™], Quantum's comprehensive service approach, leverages advanced data access and diagnostics technologies with crossenvironment, multi-vendor expertise to resolve backup issues faster and at lower cost.

Accelerate service issue resolution with these exclusive Quantum StorageCare services:

Quantum Global Services

• Service and Support Web site - Register products, license software, browse Quantum Learning courses, check backup software and operating system support, and locate manuals, FAQs, software downloads, product updates and more in one convenient location. Benefit today at:

http://www.quantum.com/ServiceandSupport/Index.aspx

• **eSupport** - Submit online service requests, update contact information, add attachments, and receive status updates via e-mail. Online Service accounts are free from Quantum. That account can also be used to access Quantum's Knowledge Base, a comprehensive repository of product support information. Sign up today at:

http://www.quantum.com/osr

Note: For DXi V1000 Standard Edition users, documentation, community support, and other resources are available through Forum V (<u>http://www.quantum.com/forumv</u>), Quantum's online support forum for virtualization products. Quantum customer support options are available for DXi V-Series Enterprise Edition users. To learn more about upgrading to Enterprise Edition, contact your Quantum Sales Representative.

For further assistance, or if training is desired, contact the Quantum Customer Support Center:

United States	1-800-284-5101 (toll free) +1-720-249-5700
EMEA	+800-7826-8888 (toll free) +49-6131-3241-1164
APAC	+800-7826-8887 (toll free) +603-7953-3010

For worldwide support:

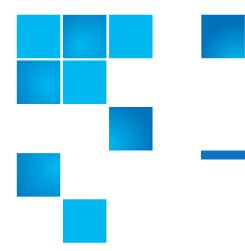
http://www.quantum.com/ServiceandSupport/Index.aspx

Worldwide End-User Product Warranty

For more information on the Quantum Worldwide End-User Standard Limited Product Warranty:

http://www.quantum.com/pdf/QuantumWarranty.pdf

Preface



Chapter 1 DXi V-Series System Description

This chapter describes the DXi V-Series system and its components and includes the following sections:

- Overview
- <u>Features and Benefits</u>
- <u>What's New in DXi 2.2.1 Software</u>
- Data Reduction
- Space Reclamation
- <u>Remote Replication</u>
- <u>Storage Presentation</u>
- <u>DXi Advanced Reporting</u>
- <u>Network Configuration</u>

Overview

Quantum DXi V-Series provides an entry point for Quantum customers who want to implement a virtual infrastructure. The Quantum DXi V-Series is a flexible virtual appliance backup solution that integrates data deduplication and replication technology to connect backup and DR (disaster recovery) protection across distributed corporate environments. DXi V-Series uses Quantum's patented data deduplication technology to increase disk capacities by 10 to 50 times and makes WAN replication a practical and effective part of disaster recovery planning. Quantum DXi V-Series is designed for customers who need to protect up to 24 TB of deduplicated data and who do not wish to deploy a physical DXi system.

Advanced Data Deduplication Increasing Disk Retention for Backup Data

The DXi V-Series leverages Quantum's patented data deduplication technology (U.S. Pat. No. 5,990,810) to dramatically increase the role that disk can play in the protection of critical data. With the DXi V-Series solution, users can retain 10 to 50 times more backup data on fast recovery disk than with conventional arrays.

Remote Replication of Backup Data Providing Automated Disaster Recovery Protection

With the DXi V-Series, users can transmit backup data from a remote site to a central, secure location to reduce or eliminate media handling. DXi[™]-Series replication is asynchronous, automated, and operates as a background process.

Enterprise Features Provide Secure Repository

The DXi V-Series presents storage as NAS shares (CIFS and NFS) or OST storage servers.

- DXi V1000 Features 1–2 TB of usable deduplication capacity.
- DXi V4000 Features 4–24 TB of usable deduplication capacity.

DXi Accent distributes deduplication between the DXi V-Series and the backup server to accelerate backups over bandwidth-constrained networks. Compatibility with Quantum's vmPRO software provides consolidated support for backup of physical and virtual servers.

Features and Benefits

The DXi V-Series system provides the following features and benefits:

- Inline data flow provides leading deduplication with an optimal combination of total system performance, manageability, and value.
- NAS or OST (OpenStorage) presentation layer.
- LAN/WAN replication compatible with the vmPRO virtual backup system, DXi V1000, DXi V4000, DXi2500-D, DXi4000 family, DXi6000 family, DXi7500, and DXi8500 models.
 - DXi V1000 Supports one source to one target replication.
 - DXi V4000 Supports ten sources to one target replication.
- OST Optimized Duplication support with Symantec Backup Exec and Symantec NetBackup.
- Supported by every major backup software vendor.

What's New in DXi 2.2.1 Software

DXi 2.2.1 Software for DXi V-Series introduces the following significant enhancements:

- Guided Setup The Getting Started Wizard has been streamlined to help you to quickly set up the DXi V-Series after installation. After you complete the wizard, there is no need to restart the system, and you can begin configuring and using it immediately (see <u>DXi V-Series Configuration Wizards</u> on page 25).
- Site Map The User Interface Site Map displays a visual map of all management pages in the DXi remote management console. Use the map to quickly locate and jump to any page (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Management Pages</u> on page 23).
- Administrative Activity Log Use the Activity Log to view a record of all activities performed by administrative and service users in the past 90 days. You can view the user who performed the activity, the time the activity was performed, and other information. You can

also download the activity log to an XML file (see <u>Activity Log</u> on page 111).

- OST Automatic Image Replication (AIR) If you are using Symantec NetBackup 7.1 or higher, you can configure an LSU for Automatic Image Replication. If enabled, data on an LSU is automatically replicated to a remote LSU that resides on a DXi in a different NetBackup domain (see <u>Replicating OST Data</u> on page 152).
- **Concurrent Optimized Duplication** With Concurrent Optimized Duplication, as data is written to the storage server, it is simultaneously replicated to the target DXi. When optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication subsequently occurs, the operation is more efficient because a portion of the required data has already been replicated to the target storage server (see <u>Replicating OST Data</u> on page 152).
- DXi Accent Improvements DXi Accent supports Windows based media servers running Symantec Backup Exec or NetBackup. In addition, data sent from the media server to the DXi can be encrypted using AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) encryption methods (see <u>DXi Accent</u> on page 179).
- **Consolidated Job Scheduler** All scheduled functions of the DXi are now managed on the **Scheduler** page, including the scheduling of replication, replication throttling, e-mail reports, healthchecks, and space reclamation (see <u>Scheduler</u> on page 181).
- DHCP Support The DXi V-Series virtual Ethernet devices can be optionally configured using Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), allowing the DXi V-Series to automatically obtain an IP address from a DHCP server (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- VLAN Tagging You can enable VLAN tagging and Jumbo Frames for any configured network interface on the DXi (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- **Space Reclamation Improvements** Scheduled and on demand space reclamation has been tuned for increased performance, while automatic space reclamation during low space conditions provides maximum free space recovery. Also, the blockpool automatically reuses free bytes when ingesting data (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 256).
- Secure File Shred With Secure Shred, you can securely and permanently erase sensitive data stored on the DXi. To securely

erase data, first delete files on NAS shares or storage servers, then start secure shred. During secure shred, all residual data associated with the deleted files is securely erased from the disk drives and is overwritten with random patterns. Note that certain limitations apply when running secure shred on a virtual machine (see <u>Secure</u> <u>Shred</u> on page 263).

• Automatic Licensing - The correct licenses are automatically retrieved from the licensing server based on your product serial number. In most cases, there is no need to manually enter a license key (see License Keys on page 260

Enhancements in Previous Releases

The following enhancements were introduced in DXi 2.1.x Software:

- Additional OpenStorage (OST) Improvements Enhancements include support for optimized synthetic full backups, and support for HP-UX 11i v3 IA-64 platforms (NetBackup only).
- **Replication Throttling and Scheduler** With replication throttling, you can configure the DXi to limit its outgoing data replication bandwidth to a specified maximum in order to avoid network contention. Use the new **Scheduler** page to set up a recurring schedule for replication throttle, and to manage schedules for space reclamation and healthchecks.
- AES 256-bit Encryption When sending replicated data to a target system, the DXi can take advantage of 256-bit encryption for stronger security.
- New CLI Functionality The command line interface (CLI) supports new and updated functionality for enabling symlinks and hard links on NAS shares, enabling SMB server signing for NAS shares, mapping OST IP addresses, scheduling replication throttling, and performing advanced configuration of network interfaces.
- Improved Space Reclamation Process The space reclamation process now better adjusts its use of system resources, consuming fewer resources during data ingest and performing space reclamation more quickly when more system resources are available.

The following enhancements were introduced in DXi 2.0.x software:

• Inline Data Flow - The new, inline data flow enabled by the DXi 2.x Software deduplicates data as it is ingested into the DXi appliance.

Optimized for the new generation of purpose-built DXi hardware platforms, it provides enhanced performance and more efficient dynamic use of system resources (see <u>Data Reduction</u> on page 7).

- **OpenStorage (OST) Improvements** Enhancements include increased total performance, including writes, reads, and replication; simplified deployment (see <u>Manage Users</u> on page 169); and dynamically sized LSUs with no hard size limit (see <u>LSU</u> on page 163).
- Automatic Replication Trigger In the Directory/File Based Replication, a file is automatically replicated after it is closed (CIFS shares) or after several minutes of inactivity (NFS shares) (see <u>Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 71). There is no need for scripting to execute this function. This action makes files at the target available for access without a local recovery operation.
- Enhanced Usability The user interface of the remote management console has been updated and improved to make it easier to see important information at a glance and perform the most common tasks (see <u>DXi V-Series Remote Management</u> on page 15).

Note: For a list of all menus and pages in the remote management console, see <u>DXi V-Series Management Pages</u> on page 23. Use this list to help find the new location of features in the remote manage console.

- Custom Network Configuration You can now create a custom network configuration using the remote management console as well as through the CLI (command line interface). The custom network option allows you to configure the DXi V-Series with individual IP subnet information for each physical interface (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- **Configuration Wizards** New wizards provide guided assistance to help users configure key features of the DXi V-Series, such as storage presentation and data replication. Each wizard leads you step-by-step through the configuration process (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Configuration Wizards</u> on page 25).

Data Reduction

Data reduction is the process of reducing the amount of storage capacity required to store your data. The DXi V-Series systems provide two techniques to optimize the storage space required on your system:

- Data Deduplication
- <u>Compression</u>

Data Deduplication

The DXi-Series disk backup and replication systems use Quantum's patented data deduplication technology to dramatically increase the role that disk can play in data protection. With DXi-Series solutions, users can retain 10 to 50 times more backup data on fast recovery disk than with conventional arrays. This advantage allows IT departments to cost-effectively retain months of backup data on disk for faster, more reliable restores and more data recovery points. Quantum's innovative implementation of this core technology means that users do not have to compromise on performance to take advantage of extended retention capability. The new, inline data flow in the DXi 2.x Software provides streamlined deduplication that offers a maximum combination of total system performance, manageability, and value.

Quantum's deduplication technology uses a sub-file, variable-length approach to identify redundant blocks in a data stream—blocks that have appeared before in the same dataset or in datasets processed at an earlier time. When a block appears that has already been stored, the DXi system inserts a reference pointer to the earlier instance of the data segment instead of storing another copy. The result is a dramatic reduction in the storage capacity needed to store the data set, and a similar reduction in the bandwidth needed to replicate deduplicated data sets over a network. For more information on enabling data deduplication, see <u>NAS Summary</u> on page 128.

Compression

The DXi V-Series systems use compression technology after duplicate blocks have been identified and replaced as part of the deduplication process. With compression, unique data that has been through the data deduplication process can be compressed at a typical ratio of approximately 2:1. This enables you to maximize the storage capacity of your system.

Space Reclamation

The space reclamation process performs multiple functions on the DXi V-Series.

When data is deduplicated it is stored in a block pool—a pool of all unique data blocks that were captured during the data deduplication cycle. When subsequent backup jobs occur, the data deduplication engine searches for new data entering the DXi and uses a variable length compression algorithm to compare new data to existing data in the block pool. Unique blocks are added to the block pool and known blocks are indexed.

The space reclamation function searches the blockpool for data blocks that are not referenced by any pointers (that is, the files associated with the block have been expired and removed). Once such a data block is identified, the block is removed to make the space reusable.

For correct system operation, space reclamation *must* be run at regular intervals (at least once a week). Quantum recommends creating a schedule to automatically run space reclamation (see <u>Scheduling Space</u><u>Reclamation</u> on page 190).

It may be beneficial to schedule space reclamation for a time when other operations are not normally being carried out. Therefore it is important to know when to schedule the space reclamation process. As best practice it is recommended that this process commences at least two hours after your backup job has completed on a daily basis. It is far more efficient to process a day's worth of new data than a week's worth.

Remote Replication

Today most backup occurs on isolated devices, making it difficult to deploy disk backup when disaster recovery protection is required. DXi-Series solutions use data deduplication and replication to decrease by up to 50 times the bandwidth required to move backup data over networks and between sites. This dramatic gain makes it practical and cost-effective for users to replicate backup data over WANs for secure, network-based disaster recovery protection, and it lets users combine rapid, local restores with sound disaster recovery protection.

With DXi-Series replication, users can transmit data from a single site or multiple sites to a central location using any DXi model. DXi-Series replication is an asynchronous, automated background process that includes encryption of data in transit. This model for protecting the distributed enterprise allows users to combine disk, replication, and tape for an optimal combination of performance, simplicity, and security.

For more information on implementing a replication plan, see <u>Chapter 5, DXi V-Series Replication</u>.

Storage Presentation

The DXi V-Series storage area is presented as NAS shares or OST LSUs (Logical Storage Units) (see <u>Network Attached Storage (NAS)</u> on page 10 and <u>OpenStorage (OST)</u> on page 11).

DXi Usage Scenarios

DXi storage presentations are optimized for backup usage rather than file sharing. Backup application usage is typically characterized by:

- Aggregated name spaces and file contents.
- Limited direct, active file access.
- Limited browsing, scanning, or metadata listing (stat).

• Limited metadata manipulation (including rename).

Usage diverging from these characteristics must be qualified to ensure acceptable behavior with respect to functionality, performance, replication, and recovery.

Network Attached Storage (NAS) The DXi V-Series system has the ability to serve as a NAS backup system (see <u>Figure 1</u>) where the following protocols are supported:

- <u>CIFS Protocol</u>
- <u>NFS Protocol</u>

Note: In the DXi V-Series, NAS shares are optimized for backup rather than file sharing.

CIFS Protocol

The CIFS (Common Internet File System) protocol defines a standard for remote file access from many computers at a time in Windows environments. This protocol allows users with different platforms to share files without installing additional software.

Active Directory Support

The DXi V-Series supports ADS (Active Directory Services) as well as ACLs (Access Control Lists). This provides the following benefits:

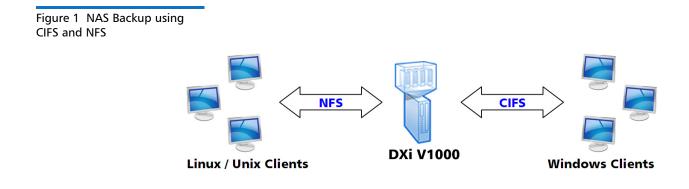
- **Compatibility with CIFS domains** NAS shares are able to join CIFS domains and use domain authentication.
- **Precise control of file system permissions** Administrators can specify which users and groups can perform what actions.
- **Robust administrative support** Administrators have the same implicit permissions as they do in Windows operating systems.

Note: Windows 2003, Windows 2003 R2, Windows 2008, and Windows 2008 R2 are supported for Active Directory domain membership.

Note: When you create a CIFS share, the initial permissions are the same as the default permissions for a Windows 2003 share with the addition of an ACE (Access Control Entry) that permits full access to the share for all authenticated users. Administrators can choose to remove this full access ACE, set up custom permissions, or leave the ACL (Access Control List) as is if the server is set up in a fully trusted environment.

NFS Protocol

The NFS (Network File System) protocol was originally designed by Sun[™] Microsystems and allows all network users to access shared files stored on computers of different types. NFS provides access to shared files through an interface called the Virtual File System (VFS) that runs on top of TCP/IP. Users can manipulate shared files as if they were stored locally on the user's own hard disk. With NFS, computers connected to a network operate as clients while accessing remote files, and as servers while providing remote users access to local shared files. This protocol is used with UNIX and Linux networks. It can also be used with Windows networks.



OpenStorage (OST)

With the OST presentation, the DXi system presents storage servers to a Symantec NetBackup or Backup Exec media server through a specific Symantec protocol. A storage server consists of logical storage units (LSUs), which are similar to directories in a NAS file system.

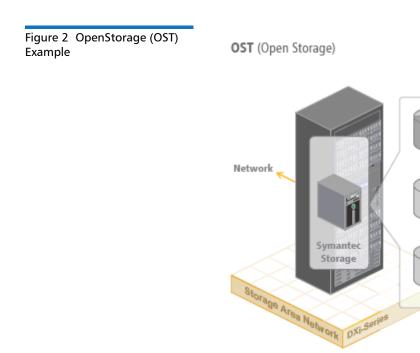
The OST presentation requires the Symantec NetBackup 7.x or later, or Backup Exec 2010 or later host application, and the OST Plug-in client

installation on the media server. Plug-in clients are host-OS dependent and are supplied by Quantum. To use the DXi in OST mode, you must configure an OST storage server and LSUs on the DXi. You must also map the LSUs on the NetBackup server so that NetBackup can perform backups and restore from them. Additionally, policies for optimized duplication (OST replication) may need to be set on the NetBackup server.

LSU 1

LSU 2

LSU 3



DXi Advanced Reporting

Quantum DXi Advanced Reporting works with all DXi-Series disk backup systems. DXi Advanced Reporting combines comprehensive performance data logging with powerful visual reporting and analysis tools to help you identify potential problems and optimize system operation. For more information, refer to the *DXi Advanced Reporting* section of your *DXi V-Series User's Guide*.

Network Configuration

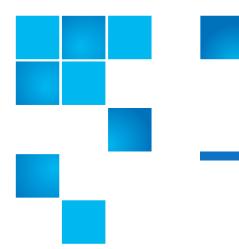
During network configuration, each individual interface on the DXi V-Series can be configured as a subnet with its own network settings. The DXi V-Series utilizes four VMware VMXNET3 virtual Ethernet ports. The virtual Ethernet ports are not bonded into a single interface. Bonding would provide a benefit only if the ESXi server has network connectivity over multiple 1GbE or 10GbE physical Ethernet ports. Similarly, there is no benefit in routing different traffic types (management, replication, or data) on different interfaces unless the ESXi server hardware is configured to utilize such a configuration.

The DXi V-Series supports DHCP for automatic configuration of IP addresses. You can also manually specify IP addresses as required by your network.

For more information about configuration network settings, see <u>Network</u> on page 193.

Note: Each configured network interface requires its own set of network settings (IP address, network mask, and gateway).

Chapter 1: DXi V-Series System Description Network Configuration



Chapter 2 DXi V-Series Remote Management

The Quantum DXi V-Series provides a powerful Web-based user interface that allows you to configure and manage the system from a remote workstation on the same network as the DXi V-Series.

Note: The illustrations in this document show the DXi V1000 user interface. The functionality of DXi V4000 systems is identical unless otherwise noted.

Use the DXi V-Series remote management console to perform the following tasks:

- Set up the DXi V-Series using guided procedures (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Configuration Wizards</u> on page 25).
- View important system information at a glance (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Home Page</u> on page 57).
- Manage data replication activities (see <u>DXi V-Series Replication</u> on page 69).
- Monitor system performance (see DXi V-Series Status on page 103).
- View administration alerts and resolve service tickets (see <u>DXi V-Series Alerts</u> on page 115).
- Configure storage presentation, data replication, and system settings (see <u>DXi V-Series Configuration</u> on page 127).
- Run diagnostic tools and maintain the system (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Utilities</u> on page 247).

Accessing Remote Management

Access the remote management console using a Web browser on a workstation that is on the same network as the DXi V-Series.

See the following sections for more information about accessing DXi V-Series remote management:

- <u>Supported Browsers</u>
- Logging On to the DXi V-Series
- Logging Off of the DXi V-Series

Supported Browsers	 Web browser software is not included with the DXi V-Series. You must obtain and install it separately. The DXi V-Series remote management console supports the following Web browsers: Windows - Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.x or higher, Mozilla Firefox 7.x or higher 					
	Note: For correct operation of the remote management console, disable any pop-up blockers and enable JavaScript in your Web browser.					
	Note: Buttons, borders, and other graphic elements may display differently in Internet Explorer 7 and 8. These differences are cosmetic only and do not affect functionality in any way.					
Logging On to the	To log on to the DXi V-Series remote management console:					
DXi V-Series	 Launch a supported Web browser on a workstation that has network access to the DXi V-Series. 					
	2 In the browser address box, type the IP address of the DXi V-Series, and then press <enter></enter> .					

The Login window displays (see Figure 3).

Figure 3 Login Window	Quantum. DX;V1000				
	Login				
	Select login type and enter password.				
	Login Type Montor (view-only access) Montor (view-only access)				
	* Password // * Required field				
	U.S. Pat. No. 5.590.810				
	Quantum DXV/1000 : DXii , IP 10				

If the **Login** window does not display, verify that the IP address is correct and that the network path to the DXi V-Series is valid. Also verify that you are using a supported Web browser. Then try again. If you are still unable to access the Login window, contact your DXi V-Series administrator.

- Note: The default IP address is 10.1.1.1. The IP address can be changed during installation using the Getting Started Wizard or at a later time on the Network page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- 3 Select the login type and enter the corresponding password.
 - Monitor Allowed to view information on the DXi V-Series remote management console but cannot make changes. (The default password is password.)
 - Administrator Allowed to view and change information on the DXi V-Series remote management console. (The default password is password.)

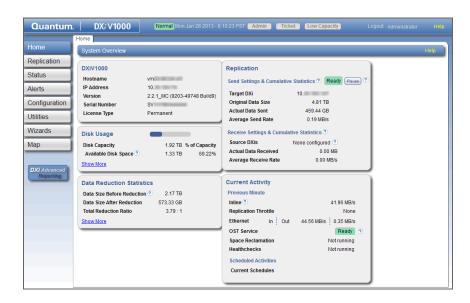
Note: Passwords are limited to 15 characters. All alphanumeric characters are allowed, as well as underscores (_) and hyphens (-). Passwords can be changed on the Web & CLI Passwords page (see <u>Web & CLI Passwords</u> on page 213).

4 Click Login.

5 If a security banner message has been specified for the DXi V-Series, click Accept.

Note: For information about specifying a security banner message, see <u>Security Notice</u> on page 220.

The Home page displays (see Figure 4).



If you are unable to log on, verify that the password is correct, then try again. If you are still unable to log on, contact your DXi V-Series administrator.

Caution: More than one Administrator can log on to the DXi at a time. If two Administrators attempt to make configuration changes on the same page at the same time, it is possible that one Administrator's changes will overwrite the other's. Always coordinate configuration changes with other Administrator users.

Figure 4 Home Page

Logging Off of the DXi V-Series	When you are done working in the DXi V-Series remote management console, click Logout on the upper right of the remote management console to end your session.
	Note: If the DXi V-Series remote management console is idle for more than 30 minutes (default setting), the system logs off the user. The inactivity timeout can be changed on the Login Session

page (see Login Session on page 219).

The Remote Management Console

After you log on to the DXi V-Series, the remote management console displays. The remote management console includes the following features:

- <u>System Banner</u>
- <u>Main Menu</u>
- DXi V-Series Management Pages

System Banner

The system banner displays at the top of the remote management console (see Figure 5). Use the system banner to see overall system status and alert information at a glance, and to quickly access additional information. The system banner also displays the time and date as well as the login type (administrator or monitor).

Chapter 2: DXi V-Series Remote Management The Remote Management Console

Figure 5 System Banner

			Low Capacit	y Online Help
	Model Number	State	Ticket	Logout
			Admin	
System Banner	Quantum. DXiV100	0 Normal Mon Jan 28 2013 - 8	3:10:23 PST Admin Ticket Low Capac	ity Logout Administrator Help
	Home System Overview			нер
	Replication Status Alerts Version Configuration Utilities	vm 10. 2.2.1_MC (9203-49748 Build9) SV Permanent	Replication Send Settings & Cumulative Statistics ? Ri Target DXi 10 Original Data Size 4.81 TB Actual Data Sent 459.44 GB Average Send Rate 0.19 MBS	ady (Pause) (*)
	Wizards Map Disk Usage Disk Capacity Available Disk Spa Show More	1.92 TB % of Capacity ce ? 1.33 TB 69.22%	Source DXis None configured Actual Data Received 0.00 I Average Receive Rate 0.00 M	ив
	Reporting Data Reduction Data Size After Red Total Reduction Rat	eduction ? 2.17 TB	Current Activity Previous Minute Inline (?) Replication Throttle	41.06 MB/s None

The following items display on the system banner:

- Model Number The model number of the DXi V-Series.
- State Displays the operating state of the DXi V-Series:
 - Normal (Green) The system is operating correctly.
 - Attention (Yellow) There is a problem with the system.
 - I/O Write Low Threshold (Yellow) Ingest continues and space reclamation starts.
 - Verify Failure (Red) The blockpool verify process has failed.
 - Low Space (Red) Available disk space has fallen to a low level. Ingest is stopped.
 - **No Space** (Red) Available disk space has fallen to a critical level. All I/O is stopped.

Click the **Status** button to display detailed status information the system.

• Admin - The Admin button turns yellow when an administration alert occurs. Click the Admin button to manage administration alerts (see Admin Alerts on page 115).

- **Ticket** The **Ticket** button turns yellow when open service tickets are present. Click the **Ticket** button to manage service tickets (see <u>Service Tickets</u> on page 117).
- Low Capacity The Low Capacity button turns yellow when available disk space falls to a low level (see Low Capacity <u>Management</u> on page 21). Click the Low Capacity button to view the administration alerts related to low disk capacity (see <u>Admin</u> <u>Alerts</u> on page 115).

Note: When disk capacity is low, target replication to the system is paused (see <u>Replication Service</u> on page 98). In addition, space reclamation is automatically started to free up disk space (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 256).

- Logout Click to end your remote management session.
- Help Click to display the online help.

Low Capacity Management

As disk capacity is used and free disk space approaches low levels, the DXi V-Series automatically responds in the following ways:

• The Low Capacity condition is activated when the amount of free disk space is less than 50 GB (DXi V1000) or 500 GB (DXi V4000).

The **Low Capacity** condition indicator turns off when free disk space is larger than this threshold.

- An administrative alert and a service ticket are generated each time free disk space drops below one of the following threshold values:
 - 50 GB (DXi V1000) or 500 GB (DXi V4000) The system banner displays Attention and the system enters the Low Threshold state. Ingest continues and space reclamation starts.
 - 10 GB (DXi V1000) or 250 GB (DXi V4000) The system banner displays Low Space. Ingest stops and replication is paused, but data can still be read.
 - **5 GB (DXi V1000) or 10 GB (DXi V4000)** The system banner displays **No Space**. All data read/write is stopped.
- When the DXi V-Series enters the Low Capacity condition, space reclamation is automatically started to free up disk space.

A space reclamation task is initiated every 10 minutes until space reclamation begins. Space reclamation ends when the DXi V-Series exits the **Low Capacity** condition. (Any space reclamation tasks running at that time are allowed to complete.)

- When the DXi V-Series enters the **Low Space** condition, target replication to the system is paused. Target replication resumes when the DXi V-Series exits the **Low Space** condition.
- Ingest of backup data is not throttled during the **Low Capacity** condition unless free disk space falls below the 10 GB (DXi V1000) or 250 GB (DXi V4000) threshold. When this occurs, no write requests are accepted until free disk space rises above 10 GB (DXi V1000) or 250 GB (DXi V4000).

Main Menu

The main menu displays on the left side of the DXi V-Series remote management console (see <u>Figure 6</u>). Click a menu item to display the corresponding management page.

To access **DXi Advanced Reporting**, click the link below the main menu. Quantum DXi Advanced Reporting provides performance data logging and visual reporting and graphing features for Quantum DXi-Series systems. For more information, see the *Quantum DXi Advanced Reporting User's Guide* (6-67353).

Note: Clicking Wizards on the main menu replaces the main menu with the wizards menu. Click a menu item to begin a wizard, or click Exit to return to the main menu (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Configuration Wizards</u> on page 25).



Figure 6 Main Menu

DXi V-Series Management Pages

Use the DXi V-Series management pages to view information as well as configure and manage the system. To navigate to a page, first click a menu item, then click a tab to display the corresponding page. Some pages include sub-tabs that display pages with additional information and options.

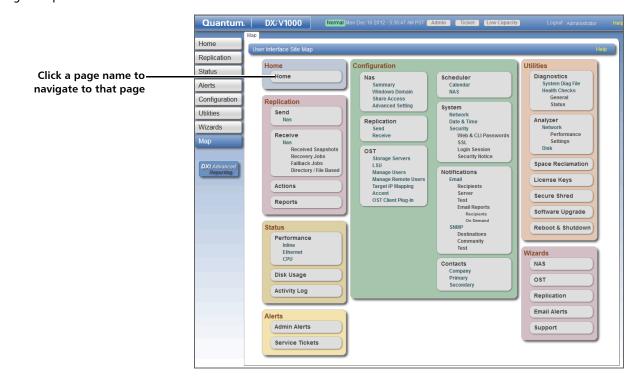
To view a graphical map of all remote management pages, click **Map** on the main menu (see <u>Figure 6</u>). On the map, click the name of a page to quickly navigate to that page (see <u>Figure 7</u>).

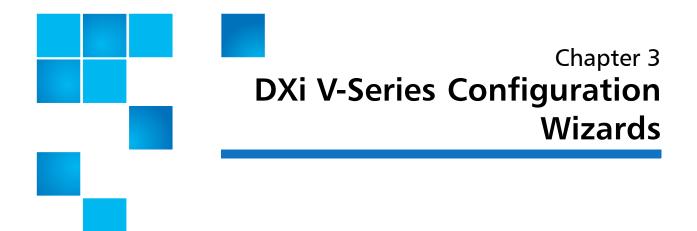
If you need help as you work, click **Help** in the page's title bar to see online help for that page. In addition, Quick Tips are available on many pages. Click the **Quick Tip** icon [?] next to a section or field to learn more about that item.

Caution: Unless directed to do so by the documentation, do not use your Web browser's **Back**, **Forward**, or **Refresh** buttons when navigating in the remote management console. Doing so may have unintended effects. Instead, always use the main menu and tabs to navigate in the remote management console.

Chapter 2: DXi V-Series Remote Management The Remote Management Console

Figure 7 Remote Management Pages Map





The **Configuration Wizards** provide guided assistance for setting up the DXi V-Series. Use the wizards to quickly configure the most important features of the system, including storage presentation and data replication. Each wizard leads you step-by-step through the configuration process.

The **Configuration Wizards** page displays the first time you log on to the remote management console after completing the **Getting Started** wizard. After that, to access the **Configuration Wizards**, click **Wizards** on the main menu. This replaces the main menu with the **Wizards** menu (see Figure 8).

The Wizards menu includes the following wizards:

- NAS Helps you configure the DXi V-Series as a NAS (Network Attached Storage) appliance for use on a Windows or UNIX/Linux network (see NAS Wizard on page 26).
- OST Helps you configure the DXi V-Series to present its storage as one or more OST (OpenStorage) storage servers for use with a backup application (see <u>OST Wizard</u> on page 33).
- Replication Helps you configure the DXi V-Series to send replicated data to or receive replicated data from another DXi system (see <u>Replication Wizard</u> on page 40).
- Email Alerts Helps you configure the DXi V-Series to automatically send notifications and reports to selected recipients (see Email Alerts Wizard on page 46).

• **Support** - Helps you enable licensed features on the DXi V-Series, register your system with Quantum, and perform other tasks that will aid Quantum customer support in assisting you (see <u>Support</u> <u>Wizard</u> on page 50).

Click an item on the **Wizards** menu to begin a wizard. After you complete a wizard, a green check mark displays next to its name on the **Wizards** menu. To display the main menu again, click **Exit**.



NAS Wizard

The **NAS** wizard provides guided assistance for configuring the DXi V-Series as a NAS (Network Attached Storage) appliance. The wizard helps you determine if the NAS shares will be used on a Windows or UNIX/Linux network, and if necessary helps you join the DXi V-Series to a Windows domain. Then the wizard guides you through the process of adding one or more NAS shares to receive backup data.

Note: You cannot use the NAS wizard to edit existing shares. For more information about working with NAS shares, see <u>NAS</u> on page 127.

To begin the NAS wizard, on the Wizards menu, click NAS.

Step 1: About

- 1 Read the information about the wizard (see Figure 9).
- 2 Click Next to continue.

Note: At any time while using the wizard, you can click **Previous** to return to the previous step.

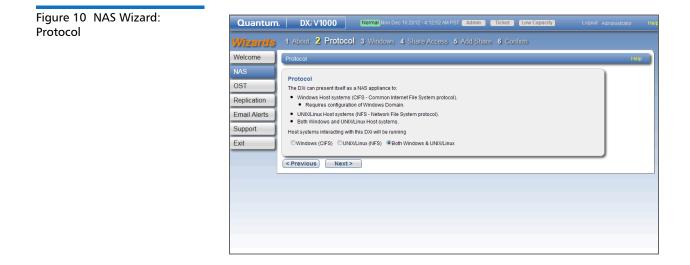
Figure 9 NAS Wizard: About

Quantum	DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 4:11:15 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
Wizards	1 About 2 Protocol 3 Windows 4 Share Access 5 Add Share 6 Confirm	
Welcome	NAS	Help
NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Network Attached Storage (NAS) ANAS unit is a self-contained computer connected to an Ethemet network which supplies data storage services to other devices. One or more NAS Shares must be configured on this DXi before it can be used as a NAS appliance. Steps to add NAS Shares: • Determine whether share will receive data from a Windows or UNIX/Linux host. • Configure Windows Domain settings if connected to a Windows host. • Add one or more NAS shares.	
	Next>	

Step 2: Protocol

- 1 Select the type of host the DXi V-Series will present NAS shares to (see Figure 10):
 - Windows (CIFS) All hosts that will interact with the DXi V-Series run Windows.
 - UNIX/Linux (NFS) All hosts that will interact with the DXi V-Series run UNIX or Linux.

- Both Windows & UNIX/Linux Both types of hosts (Windows and UNIX/Linux) will interact with the DXi V-Series.
- 2 Click Next to continue.



Step 3: Windows

- Note: If you selected the UNIX/Linux (NFS) option in the previous step, the wizard automatically skips this step. Continue with <u>Step 5: Add Share</u> on page 31.
- 1 Select an option for joining the DXi V-Series to the Windows network (see Figure 11):
 - Active Directory Add the DXi V-Series to a Windows network using Active Directory
 - Workgroup Add the DXi V-Series to a workgroup on a Windows network

Note: To disjoin a domain, see <u>Windows Domain</u> on page 135.

- 2 In the **Domain/Workgroup Name** box, enter the name of the domain or workgroup the DXi V-Series is joining.
- **3** (Active Directory only) Enter information about the primary domain controller:

- **Primary Domain Controller** Select an option for the Primary Domain Controller (PDC):
 - Use DNS Discovery Discover the PDC automatically.
 - **Specify Address** Enter the fully qualified name or the IP address of the PDC.
- **Organization Unit** (Optional) Enter the name of the organizational unit in the domain.

The DXi V-Series will become a member of this organization.

• Administrator Name - Enter Administrator or any user that has the right to join the domain.

By default, any user belonging to the **Administrators** group or the **Domain Admins** group has the right to join the domain. In addition, any user can join the domain if they are specifically delegated this right by a member of the **Administrators** group.

• Administrator Password - Enter the password for the user entered above.

Note: To configure users, see <u>Share Access</u> on page 138.

4 Click **Next** to continue.

Wizards	1 About 2 Protocol 3 Windows 4 Share Access 5 Add Share 6 Confirm	
Welcome	Windows Domain Settings	Help
NAS OST	Windows Domain NAS Shares using CIFS protocol require an SMB Server be joined to either a Windows workgroup or a Windows domain.	
Replication	Domain Type ? Active Directory OWorkgroup	
Email Alerts	* Domain/Workgroup Name	
Support	Primary Domain Controller	
Exit	Use DNS Discovery	
	O Specify Address	
	Organization Unit	
	* Administrator Name	
	* Administrator Password	
	* Required Field	
	<previous next=""></previous>	-

Figure 11 NAS Wizard: Windows Step 4: Share Access

- 1 Do one of the following depending on whether the DXi V-Series is joining a Windows Workgroup or an Active Directory Domain:
 - Windows Workgroup Enter information about the workgroup user:
 - User Name Enter the name of the workgroup user.
 - Password Enter the password for the workgroup user.
 - **Confirm Password** Enter the password again to confirm it.
 - **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the workgroup user.
 - Grant Administrator Privileges Select the check box to add the workgroup user to the Windows Administrators group.

This allows the workgroup user to override certain permissions settings and prevents the workgroup user from being locked out of shares or directories.

- Active Directory Domain Enter the Fully Qualified User or Group Name of the share administrator.
- 2 Click Add.
- **3** (Optional) To add additional workgroup users or share administrators, repeat Steps 1–2.
- 4 Click Next to continue.

Figure 12 NAS Wizard: Share Access

Welcome	1 About 2 Protocol 3 Windows 4 Share Access 5 Add Share 6 Confirm CIFS Share Access	Help
NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Add Workgroup Users For each user you wish to add fill in the appropriate information and click the Add button. * Name * Password * Confirm Password Description Grant Administrator Privileges * Required Field Add Reset < Previous Next>	

Step 5: Add Share

- 1 Under Add Share, enter information about the NAS share (see Figure 13):
 - Name Enter the name of the NAS share.
 - **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the share.
 - Enable deduplication Select the check box to enable data deduplication. Quantum recommends that you enable data deduplication to optimize disk usage.

Note: Data deduplication is enabled by default. You cannot enable or disable data deduplication after the share is added.

- Hide from network browsing (Windows shares only) Select the check box to hide the share from network browsing. If selected, you cannot see the share when browsing the network.
- **Export Protocol** (Available only if you selected the **Both** option in <u>Step 2: Protocol</u> on page 27) Select the export protocol for the share:
 - **CIFS** Select the CIFS option to use the share on a Windows network.

- NFS Select the NFS option to use the share on a UNIX or Linux network.
- 2 Click Add.
- **3** (Optional) To add additional shares, repeat Steps 1–2.
- 4 Click **Next** to continue.

Figure 13 NAS Wizard: Add Share	Quantum.	DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 4:18:54 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Helt	
	Wizards	1 About 2 Protocol 3 Windows 4 Share Access 5 Add Share 6 Confirm	
		Welcome	Add Shares Help
		NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Add Share For each share you wish to add fill in the appropriate information and click the Add button. Shares: 1; Maximum: 128 *Name Description ?? Enable ddouplication ?? Deduplication setting cannot be changed after share is created. Hide from network browsing Export Protocol @ CIFS (WIXDLinux network) * Required Field Add Reset

Step 6: Confirm

- 1 Review the settings you selected to make sure they are correct (see <u>Figure 14</u>). If necessary, click **Previous** to return to a previous step to make changes.
- 2 To make changes to a NAS share you added, first select the share and click **Delete** to delete the share. Then click **Previous** to return to the previous step and add a new share.
- **3** After you have confirmed all settings, click **Finish**. The wizard configures the DXi V-Series with the settings you selected.

Figure 14 NAS Wizard: Confirm	Quantum.	. DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Mon De	c 10 2012 - 4:22:24 AM	PST Admin	Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Hel
	Wizards	1 About 2 Protocol	3 Windows 4	Share Access 5	Add Share	6 Confirm	
	Welcome	Confirm NAS Settings					Help
	NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Confirm Settings If necessary, Modify share settings share(s) with the preference Use the Previous buft NAS settings will only Windows Domain Type DomainWorkgroup Name	rred settings. on to make changes be saved after Finisl Workgroup	to the Protocol or Wind			
		Cifs_user1	Descriptio	n No	Administrator Pri	ivileges	
		Delete					
		Share Name	Description	Deduplication	Protocol	Hidden	
		Delete		Enabled	CIFS	Not Hidden	
		Finish					

OST Wizard

The **OST** wizard provides guided assistance for configuring the DXi V-Series to present its storage as one or more OST (OpenStorage) storage servers for use with a backup application. The wizard guides you through the process of adding one or more OST storage servers, configuring LSUs (logical storage units), and adding OST users. The wizard also provides a link for downloading and installing the OST Plug-in on your backup host.

Note: You cannot use the OST wizard to edit existing storage servers or LSUs. For more information about working with OST, see <u>OST</u> on page 151.

To begin the OST wizard, on the Wizards menu, click OST.

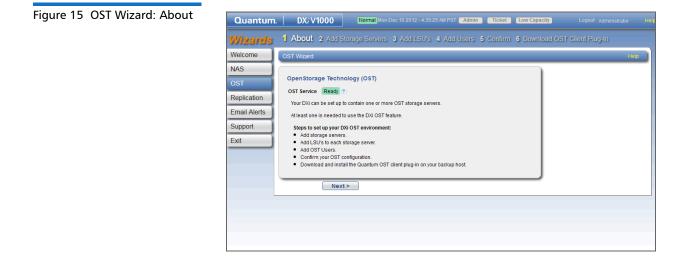
Step 1: About

1 Read the information about the wizard (see Figure 15).

The **About** page displays the status of the OST service. OST settings can be configured in **Ready**, **Stopped**, or **Verifying** state. The OST server is available for backup only in **Ready** state.

2 Click Next to continue.

Note: At any time while using the wizard, you can click **Previous** to return to the previous step.



Step 2: Add Storage Servers

- 1 Under Add Storage Server, enter information about the storage server (see Figure 16):
 - Name Enter the name of the storage server.

Caution: Do not use an underscore (_) in the name of the storage server.

- **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the storage server.
- Max Connections Enter the maximum number of connections allowed to the storage server (3 to 65536).

Note: Quantum recommends setting **Max Connections** to 300.

• Enable Concurrent Optimized Duplication - Select the check box to enable optimized duplication during OST ingest.

Concurrent Optimized Duplication is disabled by default. If enabled, as data is written to the storage server, it is simultaneously replicated to the target DXi. When optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication subsequently occurs, the operation is more efficient because a portion of the required data has already been replicated to the target storage server.

Note: To configure the target DXi, see <u>Replication Wizard</u> on page 40.

Note: When Concurrent Optimized Duplication is enabled, all data on the storage server is duplicated, not just the specified images.

2 Click Add.

The storage server displays in the **Storage Servers Added** table.

3 (Optional) To add additional storage servers, repeat Steps 1–2.

To remove a storage server, select it in the **Storage Servers Added** table and click **Delete**.

4 Click Next to continue.

Figure 16 OST Wizard: Add Storage Servers

Quantum	DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012-440.05 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He
Wizards	1 About 2 Add Storage Servers 3 Add LSU's 4 Add Users 5 Confirm 6 Download OST Client Plug-In
Welcome	OST Storage Servers Help
NAS	Existing Storage Servers 0 Added 0 Total 0 Maximum 100
OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Add Storage Server * Name Description * Max Connections 300 (3 to 65536) Enable Concurrent Optimized Duplication * Required Field Add
	<previous next=""></previous>

Step 3: Add LSUs

- 1 Enter information about the LSU (see Figure 17).
 - Storage Server Select the storage server that will contain the new LSU.
 - Use Available Capacity Select this option to add an LSU that uses the available capacity on the system.

You cannot add an available capacity LSU to a storage server that already contains an LSU. Also, if you add an available capacity LSU to a storage server, you cannot add additional LSUs to that same storage server.

- Note: After you add an LSU that uses the Available Capacity option, you cannot change the LSU to use the Specific Capacity option. Instead, you must delete the LSU, then add a new LSU and choose the Specific Capacity option (see <u>Deleting an LSU</u> on page 169).
- **Specify Capacity** Select this option to specify the physical capacity of the LSU, and then enter the following information.
 - LSU Name Enter the name of the LSU.
 - **Physical Capacity** Enter the physical capacity of the LSU (1 to 1048576 GB).

2 Click Add.

The LSU displays in the LSUs Added table.

3 (Optional) To add additional LSUs, repeat Steps 1–2.

To remove an LSU, select it in the **LSUs Added** table and click **Delete**.

4 Click Next to continue.

Figure 17 OST Wizard: Add LSUs	Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 4.44.49 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Helit
1305	Wizards	1 About 2 Add Storage Servers 3 Add LSU's 4 Add Users 5 Confirm 6 Download OST Client Plug-In
	Welcome	OST LSU's Help
	NAS	Add LSU
	OST	* Storage Server OST1 -
	Replication	loge Available Capacity 🔿 Specify Capacity 🕐
	Email Alerts	* LSU NamePhysicalLSU
	Support	* Physical Capacity (Available capacity)(1 to 1048576 GB)
	Exit	* Required Field
		Add
		< Previous Next >

Step 4: Add Users

- 1 Enter information about the authenticated user (see Figure 18):
 - Username Enter the name of the authenticated user.
 - Password Enter the password for the authenticated user.
 - Confirm Password Enter the password again to confirm it.
 - **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the authenticated user.
- 2 Click Add.

The user displays in the Users Added table.

3 (Optional) To add additional users, repeat Steps 1–2.

To remove a user, select it in the **Users Added** table and click **Delete**.

4 Click Next to continue.

Figure 18 OST Wizard: Add Users	Quantum. DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 4:47:10 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator H	lelp
	Wizarda 1 About 2 Add Storage Servers 3 Add LSU's 4 Add Users 5 Confirm 6 Download OST Client Plug-In	
	Welcome OST Users Help	
	NAS Add User OST • Username Replication • Password Email Alerts • Confirm Password Support • Required Field Exit Apply	

Step 5: Confirm

- Review the settings you selected to make sure they are correct (see Figure 19). The items to be added display in the Storage Servers Added, LSUs Added, and Users Added tables. If necessary, click Previous to return to a previous step to make changes.
- 2 To make changes to storage servers, LSUs, or users you added, click **Previous** to return to the appropriate step. Select the incorrect item and click **Delete** to remove it, and then add a new item.
- **3** After you have confirmed all settings, click **Finish**. The wizard configures the DXi V-Series with the settings you selected.
- 4 Click Yes to continue with downloading the OST Plug-in.

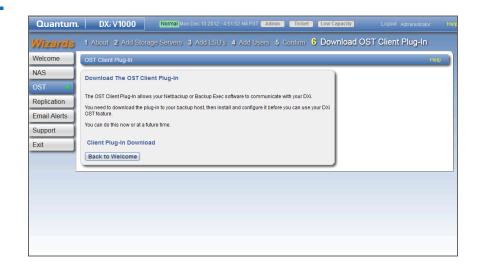
Figure 19 OST Wizard: Confirm	Quantum.	DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 4:	48:41 AM PST Admin Ticke	t Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help		
comm	Wizards	1 About 2 Add S	torage Servers 3 Add LSU's	4 Add Users 5 Confir	m 6 Download OST	Client Plug-In		
	Welcome	OST Confirmation				Help		
	NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	the entry to change The current OST will Storage Servers Adde Name Max Conn OST1 LSUs Added	2ard entries will only be saved after Fini d ections Optimized Duplication 300 Disabled al Capacity Storage Set	sh is selected.	ded.			
		Users Added User Name User1 < Previous) Fi	Description	n				

Step 6: Download OST Client Plug-In

To download the OST Plug-in, click **Client Plug-in Download** (see <u>Figure 20</u>). On the download page, download the correct OST Plug-in for your backup application and operating system.

Also on the download page, click **Installation Instructions**, to download the *OST Plug-in Installation Instructions*. Follow the instructions to install the OST Plug-in on your media server.

Figure 20 OST Wizard: Download OST Client Plug-in



Replication Wizard

The **Replication** wizard provides guided assistance for configuring the DXi V-Series to send replicated data to another DXi system as part of disaster recovery plan. The wizard can also help you configure the DXi V-Series to receive replicated data from another DXi system.

Sources *send* replicated data, and targets *receive* replicated data. A target system can receive data from up to 10 sources. However, a source system can send data to only a single target. Finally, one system can act as both a source and a target.

Note: For more information about working with data replication, see <u>DXi V-Series Replication</u> on page 69.

Note: Use the Replication wizard (or the Configuration > Replication page) to configure other DXi systems that this DXi V-Series is configured to send replicated data to or receive replicated data from. You should configure a target system before configuring source systems. To begin the **Replication** wizard, on the **Wizards** menu, click Replication.

Step 1: About

About

- 1 Read the information about the wizard (see Figure 21).
- 2 Click Next to continue.

Note: At any time while using the wizard, you can click Previous to return to the previous step.

Figure 21 Replication Wizard: Quantum. DXiV1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 5:40:17 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Welcome NAS About Replication OST The Replication Wizard helps to configure replication settings so that deduplicated data can be replicated from the source DXi to the target DXi Your DXi can send replicated data, receive replicated data, or both Email Alerts Configuring a Replication Target for this DXi Before specifying a replication target for this DXi, you must add this DXi's hostname or IP address to the target DXi's "Replication Sources" list. Support Exit Next >

Step 2: System

- 1 If data on this DXi V-Series will be replicated to another DXi system, enter the following information under Target DXi (see Figure 22):
 - a In the Target Hostname or IP Address box, enter the hostname or IP address of the system that will receive the replicated data.
 - Note: When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the Network page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

b In the **Source IP Address** field, enter the IP address that is used to uniquely identify the source DXi to the target. This may be different than the actual network IP address of the source DXi.

If the target system is at DXi 2.1 Software or higher, this field is not required. If the target system is at DXi 2.0.1.x Software or below, then you must enter the IP address by which the target system recognizes the source system. The default value is **0.0.0.0**.

c (Optional) Leave the Encrypt data before replication check box selected to enable encryption when sending replication data to the target system. Or clear the Encrypt data before replication check box to disable encryption when sending replication data to the target system.

If encryption is enabled, select an encryption strength (**128-bit** or **256-bit**). Using 256-bit encryption (default) provides a stronger level of security but may have an impact on system performance in some situations.

Note: Encryption is enabled by default. However, for best performance, if your data network is already secured, you should clear the **Encrypt data before replication** check box.

- 2 If data on other DXi systems will be replicated to this DXi V-Series, enter the following information under **Source DXis**:
 - a In the Source Hostnames or IP Addresses box, enter the hostname or IP address of the system that will send the replicated data to the DXi V-Series.

To enter multiple sources, press **<Enter>** after each entry. You can specify up to 10 replication sources.

b In the **Maximum Snapshots Per Share** drop-down box, select the number of snapshots to retain for each replicated share (up to 24).

During scheduled or manual data replication, the DXi V-Series receives a snapshot from the source system. A snapshot

contains all of the data necessary to fully recover or failback a NAS share to the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

3 Click Next to continue.

Figure 22 Replication Wizard:	Quantum. DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012-802.54 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administra	tor Hel
System	Wizarda 1 About 2 System 3 NAS Shares 4 Confirm	
	Welcome System	Help
	NAS OST OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit Source IP Address Source DXIs? Enter source DXIs? Enter source DXIs? Maximum Snapshots Per Share Naximum Snapshots Per Share Source Hostnames or IP Addresses Maximum Snapshots Per Share Naximum Snapshots Per Share Exet	

Step 3: NAS Shares

1 Select a NAS share in the **Replication Settings for NAS Shares** section to manage its replication settings (see Figure 23).

Note: For help adding NAS shares to the system, use the **NAS** Configuration Wizard (see <u>NAS Wizard</u> on page 26).

- **2** To configure the share to replicate its data to another DXi system, enter the following information under **Send**:
 - a Select the **Enable replication for selected share** check box to enable replication for the share.
 - b (Optional) Select the Enable Directory/File based replication to target check box to enable Directory/File Based Replication for the share, and then enter a Sync ID in the box.

With Directory/File Based Replication, a file is automatically replicated when it is closed or a period of time after it is modified. After replication, the replicated files are immediately available on the target system. The Sync ID is used to identify the target share that will receive replicated data from the source share. The Sync ID *must* be identical to the Sync ID of the target share on the target system.

- **3** To configure the share to receive replicated data from another DXi system, enter the following information under **Receive**:
 - a (Optional) Select the Enable Directory/File based replication to this DXi check box to enable Directory/File Based Replication for the share, and then enter a Sync ID in the box.

The Sync ID is used to identify the source share that will send replicated data to the target share. The Sync ID *must* be identical to the Sync ID of the source share on the source system.

- **b** If you enabled Directory/File Based Replication, select an **Access** option:
 - Locked The share is not allowed to receive new Directory/ File Based Replication data.
 - **Unlocked** The share is allowed to receive new Directory/ File Based Replication data.

Note: You cannot configure a share to both send and receive Directory/File Based Replication data.

- 4 Click Apply.
- **5** (Optional) To configure additional shares for replication, repeat Steps 1–4.
- 6 Click Next to continue.

Figure 23 Replication Wizard: NAS Shares

Wizards		
Welcome	NAS Shares	lelp
NAS	Replication Settings for NAS Shares	
OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Share Name Protocol Replication Disabled Image: State Name Disabled Send Image: State Name Disabled Enable replication for selected share Image: Disabled Enable replication for selected share Enable DirectoryFile based replication to target Sync ID NAS1 ? Receive Enable DirectoryFile based replication to this DXI Sync ID WAS1 ? Access Locked Unlocked Apply Reset Image: Sender Se	

Step 4: Confirm

- 1 Review the settings you selected to make sure they are correct. If necessary, click **Previous** to return to a previous step to make changes (see Figure 24).
- 2 After you have confirmed all settings, click **Finish**. The wizard configures the DXi V-Series with the settings you selected.

Figure 24 Replication Wizard: Confirm

Confirm Replication Settings	
/erify the replication settings below and click Finish. Use the Previous button to return to the section needing changes or Cancel to revert all settings.	
NAS Shares - Replication Settings	
Share Name Protocol Replication Dir/File Based (SyncID) Access Description	
Cancel	J
< Previous Finish	
	Replication Target DXi 10 Replication Source 0.0.0.0 Encrypt data before replication Enabled 256-bit encryption Allowed Replication Source DXis None configured A Mixed Shares - Replication Settings

Email Alerts Wizard

The **Email Alerts** wizard provides guided assistance for configuring the DXi V-Series to automatically send notifications and reports to selected recipients. The wizard helps you configure an outgoing e-mail server. Then the wizard guides you through the process of specifying e-mail recipients and selecting the notifications and reports to send to the recipients.

Note: For more information about sending e-mail alerts, see <u>Email</u> on page 221.

To begin the **Email Alerts** wizard, on the **Wizards** menu, click **Email Alerts**.

Step 1: About

- 1 Read the information about the wizard (see Figure 25).
- 2 Click Next to continue.

Note: At any time while using the wizard, you can click **Previous** to return to the previous step.

Figure 25 Email Alerts Wizard: About

Quantum.	DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 8:26:07 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Wizards	1 About 2 Server 3 Recipients 4 Confirm	
Welcome	Email Alerts	Help
NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	About Email Alerts Your DXi can send email alerts when it needs help or a significant event has occurred. The Email Alerts Wizard allows you to: Configure an Email Servet Specify recipients to be contacted for selected levels of notification. Complete Email Home to automatically send System Status & Configuration reports to recipients. Completing the Email Alerts Wizard is strongly recommended, but the DXi is fully operational if it is not completed. Next>	

Step 2: Server

- 1 In the Hostname or IP Address box, enter the hostname or IP address of the outgoing e-mail server (see Figure 26).
 - **Note:** When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the Network page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

2 In the From Email Address box, enter the return e-mail address displayed in e-mails sent by the DXi V-Series.

Specify a return address that lets you easily identify the system that generated the e-mail (for example, systemname@any-domain.com). The return address must contain an @ symbol and a valid domain name, including a period.

3 Click **Next** to continue.

Figure 26 Email Alerts Wizard: Quantum. DX: V1000 Normal Mon Dec 19 2912 - 826 52 AM PST Admin Ticket Tow Capacity Logout Administrator	Help
Wizards 1 About 2 Server 3 Recipients 4 Confirm	
Welcome Enail Server	elp
NAS Outgoing Email Server	
OST * Hostname or IP Address ?	
Replication * From Email Address	
Email Alerts * Required Field	
Support <pre>Support</pre>	
Exit (*Previous) (Next>	

Step 3: Recipients

- 1 Under Add Email Recipient, enter information about the recipient (see Figure 27):
 - Name The name of the recipient.
 - Email Address The e-mail address of the recipient.
 - Notification Type Select the types of notifications to send to the recipient:
 - High Send e-mail notifications for High service tickets.

High service tickets indicate that a critical problem has occurred and needs to be resolved immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are degraded, and there is a risk of system failure or data loss.

• **High and Medium** - Send e-mail notifications for High and Medium service tickets.

Medium service tickets indicate that a serious problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but it does not necessarily need to be fixed immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series may be degraded.

• All - Send e-mail notifications for High, Middle, and Low service tickets, as well as any administration alerts.

Low service tickets indicate that a minor problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but the operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are not significantly affected.

- 2 Select the **Notification Enabled** check box to enable sending of notifications to the recipient.
- 3 Click Add.
- 4 (Optional) To add additional recipients, repeat Steps 1-3
- 5 Click Next to continue.

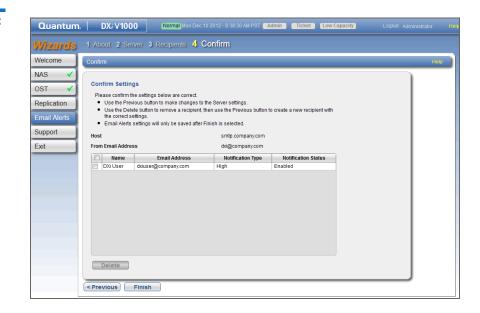
Figure 27 Email Alerts Wizard: Recipients

Quantum.	DX; V1000 Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 8:33:59 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Lopout Administrator	Hel
Wizards	1 About 2 Server 3 Recipients 4 Confirm	
Welcome	Add Email Alert Recipients Help	
NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Add Email Recipient ? Total Recipients: 1 *Name *Email Address Notification Type Notification Type Notification Enabled *Required Field Add Reset ?	

Step 4: Confirm

- 1 Review the settings you selected to make sure they are correct. If necessary, click **Previous** to return to a previous step to make changes (see Figure 28).
- 2 To make changes to an e-mail recipient you added, first select the recipient and click **Delete** to delete the recipient. Then click **Previous** to return to the previous step and add a new recipient.
- **3** After you have confirmed all settings, click **Finish**. The wizard configures the DXi V-Series with the settings you selected.

Figure 28 Email Alerts Wizard: Confirm



Support Wizard

The **Support** wizard provides guided assistance to help you enable licensed features on the DXi V-Series and register your system with Quantum. The wizard also guides you through other tasks that will aid Quantum customer support in assisting you, such as creating a system log.

To begin the **Support** wizard, on the **Wizards** menu, click **Support**.

- 1 Read the information about the wizard (see Figure 29).
- 2 Click Next to continue.

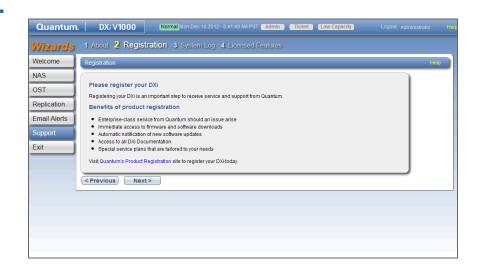
Note: At any time while using the wizard, you can click **Previous** to return to the previous step.

Figure 29 Support Wizard: About

Quantum.	DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 8:40:48 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
Wizards	1 About 2 Registrat	ion 3 System Log 4 Licensed Features	
Welcome	About System Support		Help
NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Register your DXi with 0 Create a System Log. Enable Licensed Feature		

Step 2: Registration	You must register your DXi V-Series to receive service and support from Quantum.
	Note: Registration is for Enterprise Edition users only.
	1 Click the link for <u>Quantum's Product Registration</u> site (see <u>Figure 30</u>).
	2 Follow the onscreen instructions to register your system.
	3 When you are finished, switch back to the Support wizard.
	4 Click Next to continue.

Figure 30 Support Wizard: Registration



Step 3: System Log

This system diagnostics file contains the diagnostic logs for all of the system components. The diagnostic files are helpful when troubleshooting problems on the DXi V-Series. You should generate a system diagnostic file after setting up your DXi V-Series and save it for future reference.

1 Click **Generate New** to generate a new system diagnostics file (see Figure 31).

The system generates a new diagnostics file. This can take several minutes.

- 2 After the file finishes generating, click the link to enable the **Download Current** button.
- **3** To download the generated diagnostics file, click **Download Current**.

A dialog box displays asking if you want to open or save the file.

- 4 Click Save or OK to download the file.
- 5 Click Next to continue.

Figure 31 Support Wizard: System Log

Quantum.	DXi V1000	Normal Mon Dec 10 2012 - 8:42:36 AM PST Admin Ticket	Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Wizards	1 About 2 Registra	tion 3 System Log 4 Licensed Features		
Welcome	System Log			Help
NAS OST Replication Email Alerts Support Exit	Note: After a System Dia	Download Current		

Step 4: Licensed Features	Add a license key to enable new functionality on the DXi V-Series, for example, to add capacity or extend a Time-Based license.		
	Contact your Quantum sales representative to purchase a license. You will receive a License Certificate with instructions for obtaining and installing the license key.		
	Note: For more information about licensed features, see <u>License Keys</u> on page 260.		
	There are three methods for adding a license key:		
	 (Recommended) <u>Automatically Retrieving a License Key</u> 		
	Uploading a License Key File		
	<u>Entering a License Key</u>		
	Automatically Retrieving a License Key		
	The DXi V-Series automatically checks the license server each day to make sure the appropriate licenses are installed, based on your product serial number. If you have purchased a license but the DXi V-Series has not yet automatically retrieved the license, you can follow the procedure below to prompt the system to check for the new license and install it.		

To automatically retrieve a license key from the license server:

- 1 On the License Keys page, select the Retrieve License Key from the server option.
- 2 Click Apply.

The DXi V-Series automatically retrieves and installs the appropriate licenses based on the product serial number.

Note: To automatically retrieve license keys, the DXi V-Series must have access to the Internet. In addition, firewall port 443 (HTTPS) must be open on the network.

3 Click Finish to complete the Support wizard.

Uploading a License Key File

Use this method to install a license if Internet access via HTTPS (port 443) is not available and you have a **license.crt** file.

To manually upload a license key file:

- 1 Follow the instructions on the License Certificate you received to obtain the license key file.
- 2 On the License Keys page, select the Upload License Key option.
- **3** Click **Browse** to browse the system and locate the license key file. The license key file must be named **license.crt**.
- 4 Click Apply.

The license key is installed on the system.

5 Click Finish to complete the Support wizard.

Entering a License Key

Use this method to install a license if Internet access via HTTPS (port 443) is not available and you have a license key.

To manually enter a license key:

- 1 Follow the instructions on the License Certificate you received to obtain the license key.
- 2 On the License Keys page, select the License Key option.

- 3 Copy the license key and then paste it into the License Key box.
- 4 Click Apply.

The license key is installed on the system.

5 Click Finish to complete the Support wizard.

Welcome	License Keys	
NAS	License Type Permenent Capacity 2048 GB Installed on Wed Dec 5 05 28 59 2012	
OST	License Key	
Replication	Retrieve License Key from the server Upload License Key	
Email Alerts		
Support	* License Key Note: The License Key to be uploaded must be named license.crt.	
Exit	C License Key	
	* Required Field	
	Apply	
	< Previous Finish	

Figure 32 Support Wizard: Licensed Features Chapter 3: DXi V-Series Configuration Wizards Support Wizard



The first page that displays after you log on to the DXi V-Series remote management console is the **Home** page (see <u>Figure 33</u>). Use the **Home** page to see important performance information at a glance, including disk usage, data reduction statistics, and replication activity.

To return to the **Home** page at any time, click **Home** on the main menu.

The Home page contains the following overviews:

- <u>DXi V-Series System Overview</u>
- Disk Usage Overview
- Data Reduction Statistics Overview
- <u>Replication Overview</u>
- <u>Current Activity Overview</u>

Note: Disk usage statistics, data reduction statistics, replication statistics, and current activity are updated every 30 seconds.

Chapter 4: DXi V-Series Home Page DXi V-Series System Overview



DXi V-Series System Overview

The **DXi V-Series System Overview** on the **Home** page (see <u>Figure 34</u>) displays the following information about the system:

- Hostname The hostname of the DXi V-Series. Click to change the hostname (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- IP Address The IP address of the DXi V-Series. Click to change the IP address (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- Version The software version installed on the DXi V-Series. (To update the software, see <u>Software Upgrade</u> on page 267.)
- Serial Number The serial number of the DXi V-Series. (You need to know the serial number to add a licensed feature. For more information, see <u>License Keys</u> on page 260.)
- License Type The type of license currently installed on the DXi V-Series (Permanent, Subscription, or Time-Based). (To view or add licenses, see <u>License Keys</u> on page 260).

Figure 34 DXi V-Series System Overview

DXiV1000	
Hostname	DXi
IP Address	10.
Version	2.2.1_MC (8988-49452 Build2)
Serial Number	SV
License Type	Permenent

Disk Usage Overview

The **Disk Usage** overview on the **Home** page (see <u>Figure 35</u>) displays the following information about disk usage on the system:

Note: Values are displayed as an amount and as a percentage of the total capacity in the system.

Note: Click an item to view detailed statistics for disk usage (see <u>Disk</u> <u>Usage</u> on page 107).

- Disk Capacity The total usable disk capacity of the DXi V-Series.
- Available Disk Space The disk space available for data storage (free space).

On the disk space meter, blue (left side of meter) indicates used disk space and gray (right side of meter) indicates available disk space. The left side of the meter changes color based on the amount of remaining free disk space and the state of the DXi V-Series:

- I/O Write Low Threshold state (Yellow) Free disk space is equal to or less than 50 GB (DXi V1000) or 500 GB (DXi V4000)
- Stop Write state (Red) Free disk space is equal to or less than 10 GB (DXi V1000) or 250 GB (DXi V4000)
- Stop I/O state (Red) Free disk space is equal to or less than 5 GB (DXi V1000) or 10 GB (DXi V4000)

- **Note:** When disk space is low, click the **Quick Warning** icon [!] next to the space meter to see more information.
- **Note:** When disk capacity is low, target replication to the system is paused (see <u>Replication Service</u> on page 98). In addition, space reclamation is automatically started to free up disk space (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 256).
- **Note:** For optimal system performance, Quantum recommends keeping the amount of **Available Disk Space** (free space) at 20% or more.

Click **Show More** to display additional information:

- Free Space The disk space that can be used for new deduplicated or non-deduplicated data.
- **Reclaimable Space** The disk space that can be used for new deduplicated data. If the DXi is configured with non-deduplicated shares, the DXi will automatically compact reclaimable space to create more free space as needed.
- Used Disk Space The disk space that already holds data, including deduplicated data, system metadata, and data not intended for deduplication.
- **Deduplicated Data** The amount of data that has been deduplicated.
- Data Not Intended for Deduplication The amount of data on shares that do not have deduplication enabled.
- System Metadata The amount of disk space used for internal operations of the DXi, including system configuration files as well as temporary files created during replication, space reclamation, and healthchecks.
- Note: Used disk space includes data that is eligible for space reclamation. Because of this, it may appear that your system is using more disk space than you expected. Space is only reclaimed as needed to allow for optimal performance in the event you need to restore your data.

igure 35 Disk Usage Overview			
	Disk Usage		
	Disk Capacity	1.92 TB	% of Capacity
	Available Disk Space ?	1.32 TB	68.82%
	Free Space	1.04 TB	53.95%
	Reclaimable Space	286.02 GB	14.87%
	Used Disk Space	886.02 GB	46.05%
	Deduplicated Data	581.12 GB	30.20%
	Data Not Intended For Deduplication	0.00 MB	0.00%
	System Metadata	18.88 GB	0.98%

Data Reduction Statistics Overview

The **Data Reduction Statistics** overview on the **Home** page (see <u>Figure 36</u>) displays the following information about the results of data reduction:

Note: Click an item to view detailed statistics for disk usage (see <u>Disk</u> <u>Usage</u> on page 107).

- Data Size Before Reduction The original, native size of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication and compression engines.
- Data Size After Reduction The final, reduced size of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication and compression engines.
- Total Reduction Ratio The total reduction ratio of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication and compression engines (Data Size Before Reduction divided by Data Size After Reduction).

Click Show More to display additional information:

 Incoming Replication - The amount of data stored on the DXi via replication from another DXi. This does *not* include incoming data Figure 36 Data Reduction Statistics Overview from Directory/File Based Replication, or incoming data from Failback replication.

- **Shares** The amount of data stored on the DXi via local I/O. This includes incoming data from Directory/File Based Replication, and incoming data from Failback replication.
- OST Storage Servers The amount of data stored in deduplicated OpenStorage (OST) storage servers. This includes incoming data for OST and DXi Accent.
- **Deduplication Ratio** The deduplication ratio of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication engine.
- **Compression Ratio** The compression ratio of all data that has been processed by the compression engine.

Data Size Before Reduction ?	2.18 TB	
Incoming Replication	0.00 MB	
Shares & Partitions	998.17 GB	
OST Storage Servers	1.18 TB	
Data Size After Reduction	581.12 GB	
Total Reduction Ratio	3.75 : 1	
Deduplication Ratio	3.69	
Compression Ratio	1.02	

Replication Overview

The **Replication** overview on the **Home** page (see <u>Figure 37</u>) displays the following information about target and source replication activity:

- Status The replication status of the DXi V-Series.
 - Ready (Green) The system is ready to perform replication.
 - In Progress (Blue) A replication job is currently in progress.

- **Queued** (Blue) A replication job is queued and will continue when the system is ready.
- Waiting (Blue) A replication job is waiting for another replication job to complete before beginning.
- **Partial** (Yellow) A replication job was partially completed. Generate a replication report to see the files that were not replicated (see <u>Reports</u> on page 100).
- **Manually Paused** (Yellow) Replication was manually paused. To resume replication, click **Resume**.
- **System Paused** (Yellow) The system has automatically paused replication due to a problem, for example, low disk space or a problem on the target system.

To see more information about the problem that occurred, click **Admin** at the top of the remote management console to view administration alerts (see <u>Admin Alerts</u> on page 115). You may also need to view alerts on the target DXi.

- Failed (Red) A replication job was not completed.
- Internal Error (Red) An error occurred during replication.
- **Pause/Resume** The source DXi controls the replication pause behavior. To manually pause replication between the source and target, click **Pause** on the source DXi. To manually restart replication, click **Resume** on the source DXi.

Note: When the target DXi enters low disk space condition, replication on the source DXi is automatically paused. Replication will resume when the target leaves low disk space condition.

- Send Settings & Cumulative Statistics Statistics for all data sent from the system since system installation or since Send cumulative replication statistics were last cleared by clicking Clear Send on the Replication Actions page (see <u>Replication Performance</u> on page 100).
 - Target DXi The hostname or IP address of the target system that the DXi V-Series is configured to replicate data to. Click to specify a replication target (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145).
 - Original Data Size The original, native size of data sent during replication or failback. This value does not represent the amount

of data actually sent over the network during replication or failback because data is deduplicated and compressed before being sent.

- Actual Data Sent The amount of data actually sent over the network during replication or failback. This value is usually much less than the Original Data Size due to the benefits of data deduplication and compression.
- Average Send Rate The average send rate (in MB/s) of data sent over the network during replication or failback (Actual Data Sent divided by the amount of time required to complete replication or failback).
- Receive Settings & Cumulative Statistics Statistics for all data received by the system from all sources since system installation or since Receive cumulative replication statistics were last cleared by clicking Clear Receive on the Replication Actions page (see Replication Performance on page 100).
 - Source DXis The number of source systems configured to replicate data to the DXi V-Series. Click to specify replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).
 - Actual Data Received The amount of data actually received over the network during replication or failback. Click to view detailed statistics for replication (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).
 - Average Receive Rate The average receive rate (in MB/s) of data received over the network during replication or failback (Actual Data Received divided by the amount of time required to complete replication or failback). Click to view detailed statistics for replication (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).



Current Activity Overview

The **Current Activity** overview on the **Home** page (see <u>Figure 38</u>) displays the following information about system activity that occurred in the previous minute:

- Inline The inline data flow throughput (in MB/s). Inline data flow includes deduplicated and non-deduplicated backup data as well as received replication data. Click to view detailed statistics for inline performance (see Inline on page 104).
- **Replication Throttle** The system replication throttle currently in effect (in KB/s or MB/s). When a constant throttle is enabled, the DXi limits the amount of data it sends during source replication so that it does not exceed the specified bandwidth. Click to enable or disable system throttling (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145).
- Ethernet The amount of data received (In) and sent (Out) by all Ethernet ports (in MB/s). Click to view details statistics for Ethernet performance (see Ethernet on page 105).
- OST Service The status of the OST service. OST settings can be configured in Ready, Stopped, or Verifying state. The OST server is available for backup only in Ready state.

- Space Reclamation The status of space reclamation (Not running or Percent complete). Click to start or stop space reclamation (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 256).
- Healthchecks The status of healthchecks (Not running or Percent complete). Click to start or stop space healthchecks (see <u>Healthchecks</u> on page 249).
- Accent DXi Accent activity for all DXi Accent enabled media servers.

Note: DXi Accent activity displays only if DXi Accent is currently enabled or was previously enabled (see <u>DXi Accent</u> on page 179).

- Inline (Accent) The inline data flow throughput (in MB/s). Inline data flow represents the original, native size of the data protected by the DXi.
- Ethernet In (Accent) The amount of data received by all Ethernet ports (in MB/s). This amount represents the reduced size of the data protected by the DXi (after deduplication and compression on the media servers).
- Accent Bandwidth Reduction The percentage by which network bandwidth utilization was reduced by enabling Accent.

To view or modify scheduled system activity, click **Current Schedules** (see <u>Scheduler</u> on page 181).

Note: For more detailed information about all system activity, see <u>DXi V-Series Status</u> on page 103. Figure 38 Current Activity Overview

Current Activity	
Previous Minute	
Inline ?	41.45 MB/s
Replication Throttle	None
Ethernet In Out	43.36 MB/s 0.34 MB/s
OST Service	Ready ?
Space Reclamation	Not running
Healthchecks	Not running
Scheduled Activities	
Current Schedules	

Chapter 4: DXi V-Series Home Page Current Activity Overview



The DXi V-Series provides data replication capabilities that you can use as an integral part of a disaster recovery plan. Replication allows you to configure the DXi V-Series to create a copy of your data on another DXi system at scheduled intervals (or manually as needed).

In the event of a disaster in which the original data is lost, you can quickly recover the replicated data on the remote system, allowing your business to resume normal operations. Once the original system is available again, you can restore all data back to its original location.

Note: Quantum recommends that you configure and start replication before storing large amounts of data on the DXi V-Series.

Note: A DXi V-Series can replicate data to, or receive replicated data from, a DXi system running DXi 2.x software. Replication to or from a DXi system running version 1.x software is not supported.

See the following sections for more information about the data replication capabilities of the DXi V-Series:

- <u>Understanding Data Replication</u>
- Performing Data Replication

Note: To schedule replication for a share, use the **Configuration** > **Scheduler** page (see <u>Scheduling a Share for Replication</u> on page 186). To limit the amount of network bandwidth used for replication, enable a constant throttle (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145), or schedule replication throttling (see <u>Scheduling</u> <u>Replication Throttling</u> on page 187).

Understanding Data Replication

During data replication, data is sent from one system (the source) to another system, usually in another location (the target). For example, you might replicate data from a branch office (the source) to a central office (the target).

Sources *send* replicated data, and targets *receive* replicated data. A target system can receive data from 1 source (DXi V1000) or up to 10 sources (DXi V4000). A source system can send data to one target.

Replication works only with deduplicated data, and data is compressed before it is replicated. Because of this, the amount of data transmitted between systems during replication is greatly reduced compared to the original amount of data stored. In addition, a data block is transmitted only if the target does not already have a copy of the block. Finally, data can optionally be encrypted before it is transmitted.

The DXi V-Series can perform the following types of replication:

- <u>Replication</u>
- <u>Directory/File Based Replication</u>
- OST Optimized Duplication

Replication

Replication occurs when replication is enabled for a deduplicated NAS share and a replication schedule is configured (or manual replication is performed on a regular basis). For replication to occur, the source system must be configured to point to the target system. Similarly, the target system must be configured to accept data from the source system.

To optimize the replication process, deduplicated data is continuously
sent in the background from the source system to the target system.
However, a snapshot that preserves the file structure of your data is sent
to the target system only when a scheduled or manual replication job
occurs. A snapshot contains all of the information that is necessary to
recreate a share just as it was at the point in time when the snapshot
was created.

Caution:	A saved snapshot is necessary to recover your data at a later time. For this reason, it is not enough to simply enable replication for a share. You must also configure a replication schedule (recommended) or perform manual replication on a regular basis to send snapshots of the
	replication on a regular basis to send snapshots of the share to the target system.

If the source system ever becomes unavailable, you can recover the share on the target system using a saved snapshot. After you recover a share, it is recreated on the target system and is available for use. Once the source system becomes available again, you can perform a failback operation to restore the share to its original location.

Directory/File Based Replication	Like replication, Directory/File Based Replication sends data from a NAS share to another system where it can be accessed. However, Directory/ File Based Replication differs in a number of important ways:
	 Both replication and Directory/File Based Replication must be enabled for the share.
	 A unique Sync ID is used to associate the replicated share on the source system with the share that will receive the replicated data on the target system.
	 You do not need to schedule or manually perform Directory/File Based Replication through the remote management console. Instead, replication is triggered when a file is closed or a period of time after it is modified (NAS shares).
	Note: For CIFS shares, a file is replicated immediately after it is closed. For NFS shares, a file is replicated after it has been idle (not accessed) for several minutes.

Note: To optimize the replication process, deduplicated data is continuously sent in the background from the source system to the target system. Any remaining data is sent (along with metadata) at the time a file is closed.

- After directories and files are replicated using Directory/File Based Replication, they are automatically recovered on the target system and are immediately available for use. There is no need to first recover the share to access its data.
- Deletions are automatically propagated from the source system to the target system in order to free up space on the target. In addition, you can manually initiate a synchronization from the source system at any time. Synchronizing ensures that the contents of the source share are exactly the same as the target share.

Note: If you delete a share configured for Directory/File Based Replication on the source DXi, the share is *not* automatically deleted on the target DXi. If you do not want to retain the share on the target DXi, you can manually delete it.

OST Optimized Duplication

The DXi V-Series can duplicate the data on an LSU (logical storage unit) to another location using the OST optimized duplication (OST replication) feature supported by Symantec NetBackup and Backup Exec. If you are using Symantec NetBackup 7.1 or higher, you can configure an LSU for Automatic Image Replication.

For information about configuring and using OST optimized duplication and Automatic Image Replication, see <u>Replicating OST Data</u> on page 152.

Performing Data Replication

The **Replication** page allows you to set up replication for NAS shares and to replicate and recover data.

To access the **Replication** page, click the **Replication** menu.

The **Replication** page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Send NAS</u>
- <u>Receive NAS</u>
- Actions
- <u>Reports</u>

Use the DXi V-Series data replication features to perform the following tasks:

- Replicate all data on a share to another system where it can be recovered at a later time (see <u>Task Overview: Setting Up and</u> <u>Performing Replication</u> on page 73).
- Automatically replicate directories and files to another system where they are immediately available (see <u>Task Overview: Setting Up</u> <u>and Performing Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 74).
- Recover data from a lost or damaged share (see <u>Task Overview:</u> <u>Recovering a Replicated Share</u> on page 75).
- Restore a lost or damaged share back to its original location (see <u>Task Overview: Performing a Share Failback</u> on page 76).

Note: The **Replication** wizard provides guided assistance for configuring data replication (see <u>DXi V-Series Configuration</u> <u>Wizards</u> on page 25).

Task Overview: Setting Up and Performing Replication To replicate all data on a NAS share from a source system to a target system:

- 1 On the target system, add the source system to the list of allowed replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).
- **2** On the source system, specify the target system that will receive replicated data (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145).
- **3** On the source system, create a new share with deduplication enabled (see <u>Adding a NAS Share</u> on page 130).
- 4 Enable replication for the new share (see <u>Enabling Replication For a</u> <u>Share</u> on page 80).
- **5** Before writing any data to the new share, replicate the new share (see <u>Replicating a Share</u> on page 83).

Quantum recommends that you always replicate a new share immediately after creating it. This establishes the initial data structure on the target system and greatly increases the speed of the first replication.

- **6** Choose one of the following methods to regularly replicate the new share:
 - (Recommended) Use the **Scheduler** page to set up a schedule for performing replication automatically after backups complete (see <u>Scheduling a Share for Replication</u> on page 186).
 - Manually perform replication at frequent intervals (see <u>Replicating a Share</u> on page 83).

After replication, a snapshot is sent to the target system. You can use the snapshot to recover the replicated share on the target system (see <u>Task Overview: Recovering a Replicated Share</u> on page 75) or restore the share to its original location on the source system (see <u>Task Overview:</u> <u>Performing a Share Failback</u> on page 76).

Caution: If you do not configure a replication schedule or manually replicate the share on a regular basis, your data is *not* protected. While the DXi V-Series continually sends data to the target system in the background to optimize the replication process, a snapshot that preserves the complete structure of your data is sent to the target system *only* when a scheduled or manual replication job occurs. If you do not regularly and frequently replicate your data as described in <u>Step 6</u> above, it cannot be restored at a later time.

Note: To limit the amount of network bandwidth used for replication, enable a constant throttle (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145), or schedule replication throttling (see <u>Scheduling Replication</u> <u>Throttling</u> on page 187).

Task Overview: Setting Up and Performing Directory/File Based Replication To automatically replicate directories and files from a source system and immediately recover them for use on a target system:

1 Perform the following steps on the target system:

- **a** Add the source system to the list of allowed replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).
- **b** Create a new share with deduplication enabled (see <u>Adding a</u> <u>NAS Share</u> on page 130).
- c Enable Directory/File Based Replication for the new share and specify the Sync ID (see <u>Configuring a Target Share for Directory/</u><u>File Based Replication</u> on page 95).
- 2 Perform the following steps on the source system:
 - a Specify the target system that will receive replicated data (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145).
 - **b** Create a new share with deduplication enabled (see <u>Adding a</u> <u>NAS Share</u> on page 130).
 - c Enable Directory/File Based Replication for the new share and specify the Sync ID (see <u>Configuring a Source Share for</u> <u>Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 81).

A file is automatically replicated when it is closed or a period of time after it is modified. After replication, the replicated directories and files are immediately available on the target system. There is no need to recover the share to make the directories and files available.

Note: To limit the amount of network bandwidth used for replication, enable a constant throttle (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145), or schedule replication throttling (see <u>Scheduling Replication</u> <u>Throttling</u> on page 187).

Task Overview: Recovering a Replicated Share

If a NAS share is lost or damaged on the source system, you can recover it on the target system using a received snapshot. When you recover a share, it is recreated on the target system just as it was at the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

To recover a replicated share:

1 On the target system, select a received snapshot and perform a recover operation (see <u>Recovering a Share</u> on page 87).

The share is now available on the target system.

2 (Optional) Map your backup application to the recovered share on the target system to continue making backups.

3	When the source system is operating correctly again, choose one of
	the following actions:

- Failback the share to restore it on the original source system (see <u>Task Overview: Performing a Share Failback</u> on page 76). Then, if necessary, map your backup application to the restored share on the original source system.
- Continue to make backups to the recovered share on the original target system. In addition, set up replication to replicate the share back to the original source system (see <u>Task Overview:</u> <u>Setting Up and Performing Replication</u> on page 73). In this scenario, the original source system is now the target, and the original target system is now the source.

Task Overview: Performing a Share Failback If a NAS share is lost or damaged on the source system, you can failback the share to the source system using a received snapshot on the target system. When you failback a share, it is restored on the source system just as it was at the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

To perform a share failback:

1 On the original source system, add the original target system to the list of allowed replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).

Note: For the purposes of failback, the original source system is now acting as a target because it will receive the snapshot from the original target system.

2 On the original target system, select a received snapshot and perform a failback operation pointing to the original source system, and then recover the share on the original source system (see <u>Performing a Failback For a Share</u> on page 89).

The share is now available on the original source system.

3 (Optional) If necessary, map your backup application to the restored share on the original source system.

Send NAS

The **Send NAS** page allows you to manage outgoing replication activity for NAS shares. You can replicate shares on the DXi V-Series (the source) to another DXi system that supports NAS (the target).

Note: Before you can replicate shares, you must specify the replication target (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145).

To access the Send NAS page, click the **Replication** menu, and then click the Send > NAS tab (see Figure 39).

Figure 39 Send NAS Page

ome	Send NAS	Receive Actions	Reports					
me								
plication	NAS							Help
atus	Share	e Eligible for P	enlication 2					
snares Eligible for Replication ()								
its		ation Service Re						
nfiguration			et DXi 10.20.86.22 🕐					
lities	Origin	al Data Size 0.00 I	IB Actual Data Sen	t 0.00 MB	Average Send Rat	e 0.00 MB/s 🥐		
intes	View .	Job Type 🔍 All 🔘	Replication OSynch	ronization				
zards		Share Name	Replication	Sync ID	Last Job Type	Started	Finished	Status
p	0 1	for vmPRO	Disabled	Syncib	Lust oob type	Started	Timanou	Status
	0	NAS1	Enabled	NAS1	Synchronization	Tue Dec 11 03:43:03 2012	Tue Dec 11 03:43:09 2012	Success
P		NAS2	Enabled (Manual)		Replication	Tue Dec 11 03:43:10 2012	Tue Dec 11 03:43:10 2012	Success
	0	INMOZ						
Advanced Reporting	0	11/102						
(I Advanced	0	14732						
(I Advanced	0	1102						
(i Advanced	0	14432						
(i Advanced	0	14432						
(i Advanced		19622						

Use the Send NAS page to perform the following tasks:

- View replication information for shares (see <u>Shares Eligible for</u> <u>Replication</u> on page 78).
- Enable or disable replication for a share (see <u>Enabling Replication</u> <u>For a Share</u> on page 80).
- Configure Directory/File Based Replication for a share (see <u>Configuring a Source Share for Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 81).
- Initiate replication for a share (see <u>Replicating a Share</u> on page 83).

	 Synchronize a share configured for Directory/File Based Replication (see <u>Synchronizing a Share</u> on page 83). 				
	 View replication statistics for a share configured for Directory/File Based Replication (see <u>Directory/File Based Queue</u> on page 84). 				
Shares Eligible for Replication	The Shares Eligible for Replication section displays replication statistics for all NAS shares on the DXi V-Series that are eligible for replication. To be eligible for replication, a share must have data deduplication enabled at the time it is created.				
	Note: For information about creating NAS shares, see <u>Adding a NAS</u> <u>Share</u> on page 130.				
	The Shares Eligible for Replication section displays the following information:				
	 Replication Service - The replication status of the DXi V-Series. Click Pause to pause replication activity. Click Resume to resume replication activity. 				
	Note: For a detailed description of all possible replication statuses, see <u>Replication Overview</u> on page 62.				
	 Current Replication Target DXi - The hostname or IP address of the target system that the DXi V-Series is configured to replicate data to. (To change the target system, see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145.) 				
	 Cumulative Statistics - Statistics for all data sent from the system since system installation or since cumulative replication statistics were last cleared. (To clear cumulative replication statistics, see <u>Replication Performance</u> on page 100.) 				
	 Original Data Size - The original, native size of data sent during replication or failback. This value does not represent the amount of data actually sent over the network during replication or failback because data is deduplicated and compressed before being sent. 				
	 Actual Data Sent - The amount of data actually sent over the network during replication or failback. This value is usually much less than the Original Data Size due to the benefits of data deduplication and compression. 				

- Average Send Rate The average send rate (in MB/s) of data sent over the network during replication or failback (Actual Data Sent divided by the amount of time required to complete replication or failback).
- View Job Type Select an option to filter the list of NAS shares:
 - All Displays all shares.
 - Replication Displays shares with replication jobs.
 - Synchronization Displays shares with synchronization jobs.
- Share Name The name of the share.
- Replication The replication state (Enabled or Disabled).

The **Scheduled** link displays if replication is scheduled for the share. Click the link to view or modify the schedule (see <u>Scheduling a Share</u> <u>for Replication</u> on page 186).

- **Sync ID** The Sync ID of the share if Directory/File Based Replication is enabled.
- Last Job Type The type of the most recent replication job (Replication or Synchronization).
- Started The time the most recent replication job was started.
- Finished The time the most recent replication job finished.
- Status The status of the most recent replication job (see <u>Replication and Synchronization Status</u> on page 79). Click the status to display detailed information about the most recent replication job.
- **Note:** Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.
- **Note:** Click the **Information** button **[i]** next to a share to display detailed information about the share and recent replication activity.

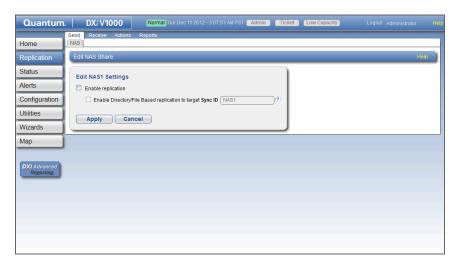
Replication and Synchronization Status

A replication job can have one of the following statuses:

	 In Progress - The replication job is in progress. 		
	 Partial - The replication job was partially completed. Generate a replication report to see the files that were not replicated (see <u>Reports</u> on page 100). 		
	 Queued - The replication job is queued and will continue when the system is ready. 		
	 Waiting - The replication job is waiting for another job to complete before beginning. 		
	• Success - The replication job was completed successfully.		
	• Failed - The replication job was not completed.		
	A synchronization job can have one of the following statuses:		
	 Queued - The synchronization job is queued and will continue when the system is ready. 		
	• Success - The synchronization job was completed successfully.		
	• Recovering - The recover operation is in process.		
	• Replicating - The replication operation is in process.		
	• Failed - The synchronization job was not completed.		
Enabling Replication For a Share	Enable replication for a NAS share to allow the share's data to be replicated to another DXi system (the target). Disable replication if you do not want to replicate the share's data to another DXi system. Note: To be eligible for replication, a share must have data deduplication enabled at the time it is created.		
	To enable or disable replication for a share:		
	1 Select the share and click Edit .		

The Edit NAS Share page displays (see Figure 40).

Figure 40 Edit NAS Share Page



2 Select the **Enable replication** check box to enable replication for the share.

Or clear the **Enable replication** check box to disable replication for the share.

- 3 Click Apply.
- Note: Quantum recommends scheduling replication to run after backups are complete (see <u>Scheduling a Share for Replication</u> on page 186). If you do not enable scheduled replication, replication will only occur if you manually replicate a share (see <u>Replicating a Share</u> on page 83) or if you configure Directory/ File Based Replication (see <u>Configuring a Source Share for</u> <u>Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 81).

Note: Disabling replication for a share does not delete any scheduled replication events for that share. If you no longer want to schedule the share for replication, manually delete the schedule (see <u>Deleting a Scheduled Event</u> on page 191).

Configuring a Source Share for Directory/File Based Replication

Configure a NAS share for Directory/File Based Replication to automatically replicate files to a target system. A file is automatically replicated when it is closed or a period of time after it is modified. After replication, the replicated files are immediately available on the target system. There is no need to recover the share to make the files available. Disable Directory/File Based Replication if you do not want to automatically replicate files.

When you configure a share for Directory/File Based Replication, you specify a Sync ID for the share. The Sync ID associates the share on the source system with the share on the target system that will received the replicated data. As long as you specify a matching Sync ID for both the source and target shares, the shares do not have to have the identical names. However, if you do not specify a Sync ID, the source and target shares must have identical names. Quantum recommends that you assign a matching Sync ID to the source and target shares.

Note: For information about specifying the Sync ID on the target share, see <u>Configuring a Target Share for Directory/File Based</u> <u>Replication</u> on page 95.

To configure a share for Directory/File Based Replication:

1 Select the share and click Edit.

The Edit NAS Share page displays (see Figure 40).

- 2 If it is not already selected, select the **Enable replication** check box to enable replication for the share.
- 3 Select the Enable Directory/File Based replication to target Sync ID check box to enable Directory/File Based Replication for the share.

Or clear the **Enable Directory/File Based replication to target Sync ID** check box to disable Directory/File Based Replication for the share.

4 Enter a **Sync ID** in the box.

The Sync ID is used to identify the target share that will receive replicated data from the source share. The Sync ID *must* be identical to the Sync ID of the target share on the target system.

5 Click Apply.

Note: After you configure a share for Directory/File Based Replication, you should periodically synchronize it to keep it in sync with the target share (see <u>Synchronizing a Share</u> on page 83).

Replicating a Share	Replicate a NAS share to send a snapshot of the share to the target system. A snapshot is required to recover the data on the share at a later time. If you have not configured a replication schedule for a share, replication only occurs when you manually initiate it (see <u>Scheduling a</u> <u>Share for Replication</u> on page 186).				
	Note: During replication, files that are in use on a share are skipped.				
	To replicate a share, select the share and click Replicate Now . The status of the replication job displays in the Status column.				
	To cancel the replication job, select the share and click Abort Replication .				
Synchronizing a Share	Synchronize a NAS share to synchronize the contents of the share with the corresponding share on the target system. To synchronize a share, it must be configured for Directory/File Based Replication (see <u>Configuring</u> a Source Share for Directory/File Based Replication on page 81).				
	Synchronizing a share ensures that the contents of the source share are the same as the target share. The synchronization verifies that the same files exist in both locations, and that no additional files exist in either location.				
	You should perform a synchronization in any of the following situations:				
	• When Directory/Filed Based Replication is first enabled for a share.				
	 If a Directory/File Based Replication job fails. 				
	 If Directory/File Based Replication is disabled for a time and then is re-enabled. 				
	Note: Even when replication is paused, the system continues to queue Directory/Filed Based Replication operations. Each time an operation is queued, the system logs an administration alert that reports the total number of queued Directory/Filed Based Replication requests.				
	Note: If a synchronization fails, make sure the target share is unlocked (see <u>Configuring a Target Share for Directory/File</u> <u>Based Replication</u> on page 95).				

To synchronize a share, select the share and click **Synchronize Now**. The status of the synchronization job displays in the **Status** column.

To cancel the synchronization job, select the share and click **Abort Sync**.

Directory/File Based Queue

The Directory/File Based Queue displays replication statistics for shares that are configured for Directory/File Based Replication (see <u>Configuring</u> <u>a Source Share for Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 81).

To view the Directory/File Based Queue:

- 1 Select a share that is configured for Directory/File Based Replication.
- 2 Click Dir/File Based Queue.

The Directory/File Based Queue displays (see Figure 41).

Figure 41 Directory/File Based Queue

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 3.17:05 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Home	Send Receive Actions Reports NAS	
Replication	NAS	Help
Status Alerts Configuration Utilities Wizards Map	Replication - NAS1 File/Directory State Progress Estimated Duration Gueue empty Ok Refresh	
DXI Advanced Reporting		

The Directory/File Based Queue displays the following information for the share:

- File/Directory The file or directory to be replicated.
- State The replication state for the file or directory.
- **Progress** The percentage complete for replication of the file or directory.
- Estimated Duration The estimated time it will take to complete replication for the file or directory.

Note: The estimated duration may display as **unknown** if replication has been very recently initiated. After the system has enough information to calculate a value, the estimated duration will display.

To update the statistics with the latest information, click **Refresh**.

Note: The contents of the Directory/File Based Queue are dynamic. Because of this, statistics are subject to change if items are added to the queue.

3 To return to the Send NAS page, click OK.

Receive NAS

The **Receive NAS** page allows you to manage incoming replication activity for NAS shares. You can recover a replicated share on the target system if the source system is unavailable. Once the source system becomes available, you can failback the share to make it available on the source system again.

Note: Before you can receive replicated shares, you must specify one or more replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).

To access the **Receive NAS** page, click the **Replication** menu, and then click the **Receive > NAS** tab.

Use the Receive NAS page to perform the following tasks:

- View received snapshots and recover, failback, or delete snapshots (see <u>Received Snapshots</u> on page 86).
- Manage recovery jobs (see <u>Recovery Jobs</u> on page 92).
- Manage failback jobs (see Failback Jobs on page 93).
- Manage shares configured for Directory/File Based Replication (see <u>Directory/File Based</u> on page 94).

Received Snapshots

Page

The **Received Snapshots** page allows you to view and work with received snapshots. When a replicated NAS share is received from a source system, it is saved as a snapshot. The snapshot contains all of the data necessary to fully recover or failback the share to the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

To access the **Received Snapshots** page, on the **Receive NAS** page, click the Received Snapshots tab (see Figure 42).

Figure 42 Received Snapshots Quantum. DX*i* V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 3:46:23 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Home NAS Rece Recovery Jobs Failback Jobs Directory/File Based Status Alerts Snapshots List 🕐 Share Name Configuration Source DXi Started Finished Status NAS2 Tue Dec 11 10:38:59 2012 Tue Dec 11 10:38:59 2012 Utilities Wizards Map

Use the **Received Snapshots** page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about received snapshots (see Snapshots List on page 87).
- Recover a share on the target system (see Recovering a Share on page 87).
- Failback a share to the source system (see <u>Performing a Failback For</u> <u>a Share</u> on page 89).
- Delete a received snapshot (see Deleting a Snapshot on page 91).

Note: The target system will retain up to 10 replication snapshots (default setting) for each replicated share. Once 10 snapshots have been saved, the oldest snapshot is deleted to make room for each new snapshot that is received. (To change the maximum number of snapshots retained for each share, see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).

Snapshots List

The **Snapshots List** displays all available snapshots that have been received from configured replication sources. Snapshots are grouped by NAS share. To see all available snapshots for a share, click the plus icon [+] next to the share name.

The **Snapshots List** displays the following information about each snapshot:

- Share Name The name of the share.
- **Source DXi** The hostname of the system that the snapshot was sent from.
- Started The time the most recent replication job was started.
- Finished The time the most recent replication job finished.
- Status The status of the most recent replication job (see <u>Replication and Synchronization Status</u> on page 79). Click the status to display detailed information about the most recent replication job.
- **Note:** Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.

Recovering a Share

Recover a NAS share if the source system is unavailable and you need to access the share (for example, to continue performing backups). When you recover a share, you select a received snapshot. The DXi V-Series uses the snapshot to recreate the share on the target system just as it was at the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

Note: Before recovering a share, you must enable CIFS on the DXi (see <u>Windows Domain</u> on page 135). Also, if the DXi is not using Active Directory, you must configure at least one workgroup user to own recovered CIFS shares (see <u>Share Access</u> on page 138).

To recover a share:

1 On the target system, select a snapshot in the **Snapshots List** and click **Recover**.

The Recovered Share Name page displays (see Figure 43).

Quantum.	DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 3:49:57 AM PST Admin Ticket Low C	apacity Logout Administrator Help
	Send Receive Actions Reports	
Replication	Received Snapshots Recovery Jobs Failback Jobs Directory/File Based	
Status	NAS	Help
Alerts	Recovered Share Name The name NAS2 is not available. Since it is already being used by an existing share, please enter a	
Configuration Utilities	new name for the share to be recovered.	
Wizards	Recovered Share Name Apply Cancel	
Мар		
DXI Advanced Reporting		

- 2 (Optional) In the **Recovered Share Name** box, type a new name for the recovered share. (The default name is the original share name.)
- 3 Click Apply.
- 4 If the DXi is joined to a Windows workgroup, select the workgroup user that will own the recovered share, and then click **Apply**.

The share is recovered on the target system. All data stored on the share at the time the snapshot was saved is available. The original export protocol of the share (NFS or CIFS) is retained in the recovery process.

Figure 43 Recovered Share Name Page

Note: After you recover a share, if you want to continue backing up data to the share, you must remap your backup application to point to the target system instead of the source system.

Performing a Failback For a Share

Perform a failback of a NAS share if a source system that was previously unavailable becomes available again. When you failback a share, you select a received snapshot. The DXi V-Series copies the snapshot from the target system back to the source system. You can then perform a recover operation to recreate the share on the source system just as it was at the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

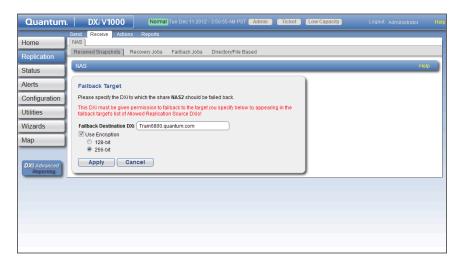
Note: Before you can failback a share, on the original source system, you must add the original target system to the list of allowed replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148). This is because, during failback, the original target is acting as a source when it sends a snapshot to the original source.

To perform a share failback:

1 On the target system, select a snapshot in the **Snapshots List** and click **Failback**.

The Failback Target page displays (see Figure 44).

Figure 44 Failback Target Page



2 (Optional) In the Failback Destination DXi box, type the hostname or IP address of a new destination system to failback the share to. (The default destination is the original source system.)

Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the **Network** page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

3 (Optional) Leave the **Use Encryption** check box selected to enable encryption when sending the snapshot to the destination. Or clear the **Use Encryption** check box to disable encryption when sending the snapshot to the destination.

If encryption is enabled, select an encryption strength (**128-bit** or **256-bit**). Using 256-bit encryption (default) provides a stronger level of security but may have an impact on system performance in some situations.

Note: Encryption is enabled by default. However, for best performance, if your data network is already secured, you should clear the **Use Encryption** check box.

4 Click Apply.

The snapshot is sent to the source system.

5 On the source system, in the **Snapshots List**, select the snapshot that was sent during the failback operation and click **Recover**.

The Recovered Share Name page displays (see Figure 43).

- 6 (Optional) In the **Recovered Share Name** box, type a new name for the recovered share. (The default name is the original share name.)
- 7 Click Apply.

The share is recovered on the source system. All data stored on the share at the time the snapshot was saved is available. The original export protocol of the share (NFS or CIFS) is retained in the recovery process.

Note: If you previously remapped your backup application to a recovered share on the target system, after you failback the share, you must remap your backup application again to point to the source system.

Deleting a Snapshot

Delete a snapshot if it is no longer needed. After you delete a snapshot, it can no longer be used to recover or failback a NAS share.

Note: You cannot delete a snapshot if a failback operation is in progress for the snapshot. Wait for the failback operation to complete, or abort the operation (see <u>Failback Jobs</u> on page 93).

To delete a snapshot:

- 1 Do one of the following actions:
 - On the source system, disable replication for the share associated with the snapshot (see <u>Enabling Replication For a</u> <u>Share</u> on page 80).
 - On the target system, delete the source system associated with the snapshot from the list of allowed replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).
- 2 On the target system, select a snapshot in the **Snapshots List** and click **Delete**.

Note: You cannot delete a snapshot if it is the last received snapshot for a share.

3 Click Yes to confirm the action.

Recovery Jobs

The **Recovery Jobs** page allows you to view information about snapshot recover operations that were previously completed.

To access the **Recovery Jobs** page, on the **Receive NAS** page, click the **Recovery Jobs** tab (see <u>Figure 45</u>).

Figure 45 Recovery Jobs Page

Quantum	. DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Tue Dec 11	2012 - 3:56:23 AM PST 🦲 🗛	Imin Ticket Low Capa	acity Logout Admi				
Hame	Send Receive Actions	Reports							
Home	-	tecovery Jobs Failback J	obs Directory/File Based						
Replication	NAS Help								
Status	1045					Help			
Alerts	Snapshot Recover	y Jobs 🕐							
Configuration	Original Share N		Source DXi	Started	Finished	Status	Ш		
Utilities	NAS2	NAS2Recover	Train	Tue Dec 11 03:54:18 2012	Tue Dec 11 03:54:23 2012	Success	ш		
Wizards							Ш		
Мар							Ш		
map							Ш		
DXI Advanced Reporting									
	Delete Job Info)					н		

The **Snapshot Recovery Jobs** section displays the following information about recovery jobs:

- Original Share Name The name of the share the snapshot was created from.
- New Share Name The name of the share the snapshot was recovered to.
- **Source DXi** The hostname of the system that the snapshot was received from.
- **Started** The time the recovery job was started.
- Finished The time the recovery job finished.
- Status The status of the recovery job (Success, In Progress, or Failed).

To delete information for a recovery job, select it in the **Snapshot Recovery Jobs** list and click **Delete Job Info**.

Failback Jobs

Figure 46

The **Failback Jobs** page allows you to view information about snapshot failback operations that were previously completed. You can also abort a failback that is currently in progress.

To access the **Failback Jobs** page, on the **Receive NAS** page, click the **Failback Jobs** tab (see <u>Figure 46</u>).

Failback Jobs Page	Quantum	n. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 3:57:38 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He					
		Send Receive Actions Reports					
Home TMS Replication Received Snapshots Recovery Jobs Failback Jobs Directory/File Based							
	Alerts	Snapshot Failback Jobs 💿					
	Configuration						
	Utilities	NAS2 10. Tue Dec 11 03:56:39 2012 Tue Dec 11 03:56:39 2012 Success					
	Wizards						
	Мар						
	DXI Advanced Reporting						
	Reporting						
		Abort/Delete Job Info					

The **Snapshot Failback Jobs** section displays the following information about failback jobs:

- Share Name The name of the share the snapshot was created from.
- **Destination DXi** The hostname of the system that the snapshot was sent to.
- Started The time the failback job was started.
- Finished The time the failback job finished.
- Status The status of the failback job (Success, In Progress, or Failed).

Use the Failback Jobs page to perform the following tasks:

Figure 47 Directory/File Based

Page

	 To delete information for a failback job, select it in the Snapshot Failback Jobs section and click Delete Job Info.
	 To abort a failback job that is in progress, select it in the Snapshot Failback Jobs section and click Abort.
Directory/File Based	The Directory/File Based page allows you to manage Directory/File Based Replication on the target system. You can configure a NAS share to receive Directory/File Based Replication data sent from a source system and view replication statistics for the share.
	Note: For information about creating NAS shares, see <u>Adding a NAS</u> <u>Share</u> on page 130.
	To access the Directory/File Based page, on the Receive NAS page, click

the Directory/File Based tab (see Figure 47).

Quantum. DXi V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 3:59:13 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Receive NAS Home Received Snapshots Reco ery Jobs Failback Jobs Directory/File Based Replication Status Alerts Shares Eligible to Receive Directory/File based Data ? Configuration Share Name State Sync ID Access for_vmPRO NAS1 NAS2 NAS2Recover Disabled Utilities Disabled Disabled Wizards Disabled Map Edit... View Unpack Queue

Use the Directory/File Based page to perform the following tasks:

- View shares eligible to receive Directory/File Based data (see <u>Shares</u> <u>Eligible to Receive Directory/File Based Data</u> on page 95)
- Configure a share to receive Directory/File Based Replication data (see <u>Configuring a Target Share for Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 95)

 View statistics for shares configured for Directory/File Based Replication (see <u>Unpack Queue</u> on page 97)

Shares Eligible to Receive Directory/File Based Data

The **Shares Eligible to Receive Directory/File Based Data** section displays information for all NAS shares on the DXi V-Series that are eligible to receive Directory/File Based Replication data from a source share. To be eligible to receive Directory/File Based Replication data, a share must have data deduplication enabled at the time it is created.

The **Shares Eligible for Replication** section displays the following information:

- Share Name The name of the share.
- State The state of Directory/File Based Replication for the share (Enabled or Disabled).
- **Sync ID** The Sync ID used to identify the source share that will send replicated data to the share.
- Access The selected access option for the share (Locked or Unlocked).

Note: Click the Information button **[i]** next to a share to display detailed information about the share and recent replication activity.

Configuring a Target Share for Directory/File Based Replication

Configuring a NAS share for Directory/File Based Replication enables the automatic replication of files and directories on the source share to the target share. Before you configure a share on the source system for Directory/File Based Replication, you must configure a share on the target system to receive the replicated data from the source share.

Note: For information about configuring Directory/File Based Replication on the source system, see <u>Configuring a Source</u> <u>Share for Directory/File Based Replication</u> on page 81.

To configure a target share for Directory/File Based Replication:

1 Select the share and click Edit.

The Edit Share Settings page displays (see Figure 48).

Figure 48 Edit Share Settings Page	Quantum. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 4:00.24 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Halp Send Receive Actions Reports Receive Actions Reports
	Home NAS Replication Received Snapshots Recovery Jobs Failback Jobs Diredory/File Based Status NAS Holp Alerts Edit NAS2 Settings Configuration Enable to receive Directory/File Based replication data Sync ID: NAS Access: Locked
	Wizards Map Apply Cancel DXI Advanced Reporting

2 Select the Enable to receive Directory/File Based replication data check box to enable Directory/File Based Replication for the share.

Or clear the Enable to receive Directory/File Based replication data check box to disable Directory/File Based Replication for the share.

3 Enter a **Sync ID** in the box.

The Sync ID is used to identify the source share that will send replicated data to the target share. The Sync ID *must* be identical to the Sync ID of the source share on the source system.

- 4 Select an Access option:
 - Locked The share is not allowed to receive new Directory/File Based Replication data.
 - Unlocked The share is allowed to receive new Directory/File Based Replication data.

Note: If a share configured for Directory/Filed Based Replication is locked on the target system, synchronization jobs may fail on the source system.

5 Click Apply.

Unpack Queue

Use the **Unpack Queue** to view Directory/File Based Replication statistics for data received from the source system.

To view the **Unpack Queue**, select a share and click **View Unpack Queue** (see Figure 49).

Figure 49 Unpack Queue	Quantum. DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 4 01:19 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Help
	Send Receive Actions Reports
	Home NAS
	Replication Received Snapshots Recovery Jobs Failback Jobs Directory/File Based
	Status Help
	Alerts Unpack Queue - NA92
	Configuration File Directory State
	Utilities Queue empty
	Wizards Ok Refresh
	Map
	DXI Advanced Reporting

The **Unpack Queue** displays the following information:

- File/Directory The file or directory to be replicated.
- State The replication state of the file or directory.

Click **Refresh** to update the statistics in the Unpack Queue. Click **OK** to return to the **Directory/File Based** page.

Actions

The **Actions** page allows you to manage replication activity on the DXi V-Series. You can pause the replication service, enable the replication state, and clear performance statistics.

To access the **Actions** page, click the **Replication** menu, and then click the **Actions** tab (see <u>Figure 50</u>).



Use the Actions page to perform the following tasks:

- Pause or resume the replication service (see <u>Replication Service</u> on page 98).
- Enable or disable the replication state (see <u>Replication State</u> on page 99).
- Clear cumulative replication statistics (see <u>Replication Performance</u> on page 100).

Replication Service

The replication service controls replication and failback traffic on the DXi V-Series.

• Click Pause to pause all replication and failback traffic.

Figure 50 Actions Page

If a replication job is currently in progress, the system continues to
replicate the current block of data. The process of replicating the
current block can take up to 15 minutes to complete. After the
block has completed replication, the system pauses replication.

- **Note:** If you pause a replication job that is in process, a Failure event is logged in the replication report (see <u>Reports</u> on page 100).
- Click **Resume** to resume all incoming and outgoing replication and failback traffic.

If a replication job was in progress when replication was paused, the replication job continues.

 Replication State
 The replication state applies to all NAS shares on the DXi V-Series that are eligible for replication (that is, all deduplicated shares).

- Note: The Replication Actions page may appear busy for a few moments when enabling or disabling the replication state. Wait for the process to complete before performing other actions.
- Click **Enable** to enable replication for all shares.
- Click **Disable** to disable replication for all shares.

If a replication job is currently in progress, the system continues until the entire replication job is complete. After the replication job has completed, the system disables replication. The system will not be able to replicate data for any shares until you click **Enable**.

Note: To disable replication for a single share, select it on the Replication > Send page and click Edit. Clear the Enable replication and the Enable scheduled replication check boxes, and then click Apply. For more information, see <u>Send NAS</u> on page 77.

Replication Performance

The DXi V-Series maintains cumulative performance statistics for send and receive replication activity. The statistics appear on the **Home** page and elsewhere. To reset these statistics so the system will calculate them with new data going forward, click **Clear**.

- Click **Clear Send** to reset cumulative performance statistics gathered while replicating shares to target systems, or when sending a snapshot during a failback operation.
- Click **Clear Receive** to reset cumulative performance statistics gathered while receiving replicated shares from source systems, or when receiving a snapshot during a failback operation.

Reports

The **Reports** page allows you to generate and download a replication report. The report includes detailed information about all replication activity, including Directory/File Based Replication.

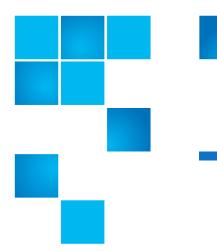
To access the **Reports** page, click the **Replication** menu, and then click the **Reports** tab (see <u>Figure 51</u>).



Use the **Reports** page to perform the following tasks:

- To generate a new replication report, click **Generate New**.
- To download the most recently generated replication report, click **Download Current**.

Save the replication report to your local workstation, and then unzip the downloaded file. The report consists of a ZIP file that contains multiple CSV (comma separated value) files. To view the CSV files, open them in a compatible spreadsheet application. Chapter 5: DXi V-Series Replication Reports



Chapter 6 DXi V-Series Status

The **Status** page allows you to view performance and disk usage information.

To access the Status pages, click the Status menu.

The Status pages contains the following tabs:

- Performance
- Disk Usage
- DXi Accent Status
- <u>Activity Log</u>

Performance

The **Performance** page allows you to view information about system performance, including inline throughput, network throughput, and CPU usage.

To access the **Performance** page, click the **Status** menu, and then click the **Performance** tab.

The Performance page contains the following tabs:

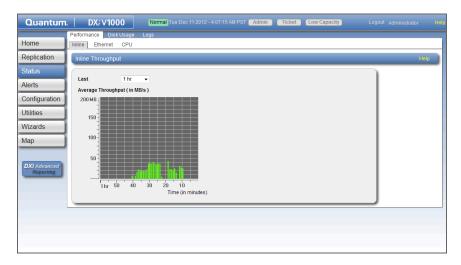
• Inline

- <u>Ethernet</u>
- <u>CPU</u>

Inline

The **Inline** page allows you to view throughput performance for inline data flow. Inline data flow includes deduplicated and non-deduplicated backup data as well as received replication data.

To access the **Inline** page, on the **Performance** page, click the **Inline** tab (see <u>Figure 52</u>).



Use the **Inline** page to display recent inline data flow activity in a dynamic graph:

- Select the amount of time to display in the Last list (1–24 hours).
- The horizontal axis displays time (in minutes).
- The vertical access displays inline throughput (0–2,000 MB/s).

Note: The range represented by the Y-axis changes based on the maximum value, increasing in 200 MB increments as needed.

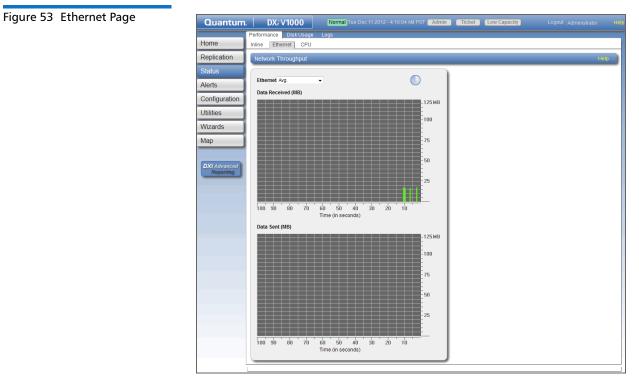
- Each bar on the graph represents approximately 1 minute of time.
- Hold the cursor over a bar to display the value of the bar.

Figure 52 Inline Page

Ethernet

The **Ethernet** page allows you to view throughput performance for network send and receive activity.

To access the **Ethernet** page, on the **Performance** page, click the **Ethernet** tab (see <u>Figure 53</u>).



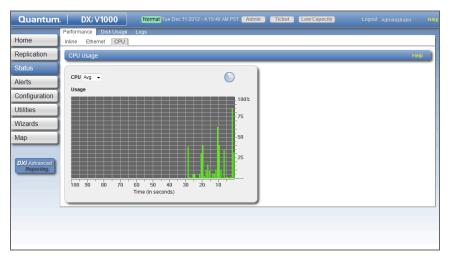
Use the **Ethernet** page to display recent network activity in dynamic graphs:

- The top graph reports data received and the bottom graph reports data sent.
- Select the port to monitor in the **Ethernet** drop-down box, or select **Avg** to display an average of all ports.
- The horizontal axis displays time (0–100 seconds).
- The vertical axis displays data throughput (0–125 MB/s for 1 GbE ports or 0–1.25 GB/s for 10 GbE ports).

- Values that exceed the maximum value of the vertical axis are shown in lighter green.
- Each bar on the graph represents approximately 1 second of time.
- Hold the cursor over a bar to display the value of the bar.

The **CPU** page allows you to view CPU usage.

To access the CPU page, on the **Performance** page, click the **CPU** tab (see Figure 54).



Use the **CPU** page to display recent CPU usage in a dynamic graph:

• Select the CPU core to monitor in the **CPU** drop-down box, or select **Avg** to display an average of all CPUs.

Note: The **CPU** drop-down box lists all CPU threads. Each hyperthreaded CPU core counts as two threads.

- The horizontal axis displays time (0–100 seconds).
- The vertical axis displays CPU usage (0–100%).
- Each bar on the graph represents approximately 1 second of time.
- Hold the cursor over a bar to display the value of the bar.

Figure 54 CPU Page

CPU

Disk Usage

The **Disk Usage** page allows you to view information about free and used disk space on the system. You can also view data reduction statistics.

To access the **Disk Usage** page, click the **Status** menu, and then click the **Disk Usage** tab (see <u>Figure 55</u>).

Figure 55 Disk Usage Page	Quantum.	DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Tue Dec 11 2012 - 4	20:15 AM PST	Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
		Performance Disk Usage Log				
	Home		ys			
		Disk Usage				Help
	Replication	Available 1.92 TB (99.64% of 0	Canacity)	1		
	Status	Detail	Value % of Capacity			
	Alerts	Free Space	1.92 TB 99.64%			
	Alerts	Reclaimable Space	0.00 MB 0.00%			
	Configuration	Used 7.00 GB (0.36% of Capac	at.s.	1		
	Utilities					
		Detail Deduplicated Data	Value % of Capacity 0.01 MB 0.00%			
	Wizards	Data Not Intended for Deduplicat				
	Мар	System Metadata	7.00 GB 0.36%			
		Data Before Reduction 2	0.01 MB	i		
	DXI Advanced	Detail	Value			
	Reporting	Incoming Replication	0.00 MB			
		NFS Deduplicated Shares CIFS Deduplicated Shares	0.01 MB 0.00 MB			
		Deduplicated Partitions	0.00 MB			
		OST Storage Servers	0.00 MB			
		Data After Reduction 2 0.0	01 MB	í		
		Detail	Value			
		Total Reduction Ratio	0.70			
		Deduplication Ratio	0.04			
		Compression Ratio	16.81			

Use the **Disk Usage** page to view the following information:

- Available
- Used
- Data Before Reduction
- Data After Reduction

Available

Available space is the area that is available for data storage. The **Available** value is displayed as an amount and as a percentage of the total capacity in the system.

Available space is divided into the following categories:

- Free Space The disk space that can be used for new deduplicated or non-deduplicated data.
- **Reclaimable Space** The disk space that can be used for new deduplicated data. If the DXi is configured with non-deduplicated shares, the DXi will automatically compact reclaimable space to create more free space as needed.

Note: For optimal system performance, Quantum recommends keeping the amount of **Available** disk space at 20% or more.

Used	Used space is the area that already holds data. The Used value is displayed as an amount and as a percentage of the total capacity in the system. Used space is divided into the following categories: Note: The value for each category is displayed as an amount and as a percentage of the total capacity in the system.					
	 Deduplicated Data - The amount of data that has been deduplicated. 					
	 Data Not Intended For Deduplication - The amount of data that will not be deduplicated (data on shares that do not have deduplication enabled). 					
	• System Metadata - The amount of disk space used for internal operations of the DXi, including system configuration files as well as temporary files created during replication, space reclamation, and healthchecks.					
Data Before Reduction	The Data Before Reduction value represents the original, native size of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication and compression engines.					
	Data before reduction is divided into the following categories:					
	 Incoming Replication - The amount of data stored on the DXi via replication from another DXi. This does <i>not</i> include incoming data from Directory/File Based Replication, or incoming data from Failback replication. 					

- NFS Deduplicated Shares The amount of data stored in deduplicated shares configured in Network File System (NFS) format for Linux systems. This includes incoming data from Directory/File Based Replication, and incoming data from Failback replication.
- CIFS Deduplicated Shares The amount of data stored in deduplicated shares configured in Common Internet File System (CIFS), also known as Server Message Block (SMB), format for Windows systems. This includes incoming data from Directory/File Based Replication, and incoming data from Failback replication.
- OST Storage Servers The amount of data stored in deduplicated OpenStorage (OST) storage servers. This includes incoming data for OST and DXi Accent.

Data After ReductionThe Data After Reduction value represents the final, reduced size of all
data that has been processed by the data deduplication and
compression engines.

Data after reduction is divided into the following categories:

- Total Reduction Ratio The total reduction ratio of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication and compression engines (Data Before Reduction divided by Data After Reduction).
- **Deduplication Ratio** The deduplication ratio of all data that has been processed by the data deduplication engine.
- **Compression Ratio** The compression ratio of all data that has been processed by the compression engine.

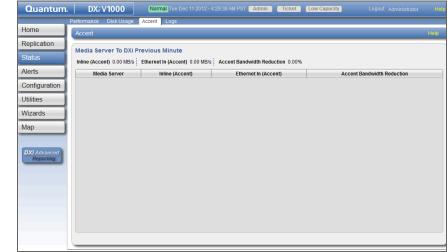
DXi Accent Status

Use the **Accent Status** page to view information about recent DXi Accent activity.

Note: The **Accent Status** page displays only if DXi Accent is currently enabled or was previously enabled (see <u>DXi Accent</u> on page 179).

Figure 56 Accent Status Page

To access the **Accent Status** page, click the **Status** menu, and then click the **Accent** tab (see <u>Figure 56</u>).



The **Accent** section displays the following information about DXi Accent activity in the previous minute:

- Media Server To DXi Previous Minute DXi Accent activity for all Accent enabled media servers.
 - Inline (Accent) The inline data flow throughput (in MB/s). Inline data flow represents the original, native size of the data protected by the DXi.
 - Ethernet In (Accent) The amount of data received by all Ethernet ports (in MB/s). This amount represents the reduced size of the data protected by the DXi (after deduplication and compression on the media servers).
 - Accent Bandwidth Reduction The percentage by which network bandwidth utilization was reduced by enabling Accent.
- Media Server The IP address of the media server.
- Inline (Accent) The inline data flow throughput (in MB/s). Inline data flow represents the original, native size of the data protected by the DXi.
- Ethernet In (Accent) The amount of data received by all Ethernet ports (in MB/s). This amount represents the reduced size of the data

Home

protected by the DXi (after deduplication and compression on the media server).

• Accent Bandwidth Reduction - The percentage by which network bandwidth utilization was reduced by enabling Accent.

Activity Log

The **Activity Log** page allows you to view a record of all activities performed by administrative and service users in the past 90 days. You can view the user who performed the activity, the time the activity was performed, and other information. You can also download the activity log to an XML file.

To access the **Activity Log** page, click the **Status** menu, and then click the **Logs** tab (see Figure 57).

	Quantum.			nal Tue Dec 11 20)12 - 4:39:46 AM PST	Admin	Ticket Lo	w Capacity Logout Administrator	He
		erformance Activity Log	Disk Usage Logs						
	Replication	Administrati	ve Activity Log						Help
Activity log toolbar	Status	Delete Delete	All Download Log C	isable Logging					5
,,	Alerts	User	Date/Time 👻	Origin	Action	Category	Role	Summary	
	Configuration	Administrator	2012-12-11 11:51:26	GUI	CREATE	UTILITY	ADMIN	authenticatename=admin encrypted.password=***dient=GUI apicallername=QSys_Authenticate	Î
	Utilities Wizards	Administrator	2012-12-11 09:49:16	GUI	CREATE	UTILITY	ADMIN	authenticatename =admin encrypted.password=***clent=GUI apicallername=QSys_Authenticate	E
		root	2012-12-11 06:00:06	CLI	CREATE	HEALTHCHE	ADMIN	start=healthcheck	
	Мар	root	2012-12-10 19:45:02	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs28namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:45:01	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs28namespace	
	DXI Advanced	root	2012-12-10 19:45:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs26namespace	
	Reporting	root	2012-12-10 19:35:02	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs26namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:35:01	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs24namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:35:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs22namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:33:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs24namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:25:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs20namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:23:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs22namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:15:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs18namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:13:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs20namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:05:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs16namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 19:03:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs18namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 18:55:00	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs14namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 18:53:01	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs16namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 18:45:01	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icenfs12namespace	
		root	2012-12-10 18:43:01	CLI	CREATE	REPLICATION	ADMIN	replicate=nasname=icecifs14namespace	-
Navigation controls		14 4 Page	1 of 20 🕨	2				Displaying Items 1 - 100 o	of 1908

Figure 57 Activity Log Page

Use the Activity Log page to perform the following tasks:

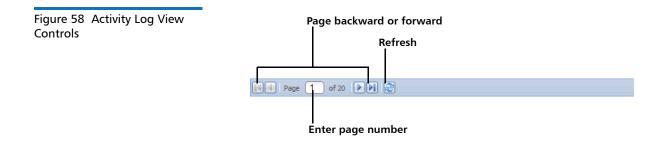
- View information about activities that have been recorded in the log (see <u>Viewing Logged Activities</u> on page 112).
- Enable or disable the recording of activities in the log (see <u>Enabling</u> or <u>Disabling Activity Logging</u> on page 113).
- Delete one or more activities from the log (see <u>Deleting Logged</u> <u>Activities</u> on page 114).
- Download the activity log in XML format (see <u>Downloading the</u> <u>Activity Log</u> on page 114).

Viewing Logged Activities	The Administrative Activity Log list displays the following information for each entry:
	 User - The user that performed the activity (Administrator, Monitor, Service, Engineering, cliadmin, or root).
	• Date/Time - The date and time the activity was performed.
	 Origin - The interface where the activity originated. Possible origins are the GUI (remote management console) or the CLI (command line interface).
	• Action - The type of activity performed (Create, Update, or Delete).
	 Category - The category of the activity (Alert, Analyzer, Cluster, Date Time, Email, Event, Hard Drive Security, Healthcheck, NAS, Network, OST, Replication, Security, SNMP, Utility).
	• Role - The role of the user that performed the activity (Admin).
	 Summary - Details about the activity that was performed, including CLI commands and field values.
	Note: Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.
	Note: To rearrange the order of the columns, click and drag a column heading left or right. To show or hide columns, click the arrow to the right of a column heading. In the pop-up menu, point to Columns , then select the name of a column to show or hide it.

Navigating in the Activity Log

Use the controls at the bottom of the **Administrative Activity Log** list to adjust the activity log view (see <u>Figure 58</u>):

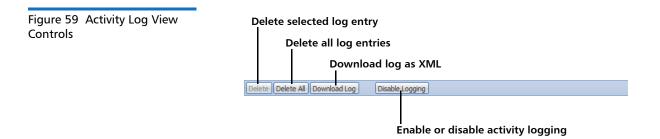
- To navigate between pages in the list, use the left and right arrows.
- To view a specific page, type the page number in the box.
- To update the activity log with latest data, click the **Refresh** icon.



Enabling or Disabling Activity Logging

By default, activity logging is enabled on the DXi V-Series. Use the toolbar above the **Administrative Activity Log** list to enable or disable activity logging (see Figure 59).

- To enable the logging of administrative and service actions, click **Enable Logging** on the toolbar.
- To disable the logging of administrative and service actions, click **Disable Logging** on the toolbar.



Deleting Logged Activities

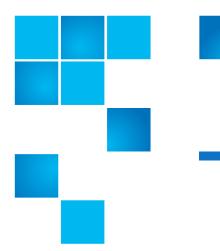
Use the toolbar above the **Administrative Activity Log** list to delete one or more entries in the activity log (see Figure 59).

- To delete a log entry, select the entry and click **Delete**.
- To delete all entries in the activity log, click **Delete All**.

Downloading the Activity Log

Use the toolbar above the **Administrative Activity Log** list to save the activity log in XML format (see <u>Figure 59</u>). You can then open the log file in another program that is compatible with XML.

To download the activity log, click **Download Log**. Specify a location to save the file, and then click **OK** or **Save**.



Chapter 7 DXi V-Series Alerts

The **Alerts** page allows you to view and work with administration alerts and service tickets. The DXi V-Series generates administration alerts and service tickets when a hardware or software event occurs.

To access the Alerts page, click the Alerts menu.

The Alerts page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Admin Alerts</u>
- <u>Service Tickets</u>

Admin Alerts

The **Admin Alerts** page allows you to view and work with administration alerts. The DXi V-Series generates an administration alert when the condition of the system has changed, such as going from the offline state to the online state.

Note: In addition to viewing administration alerts on the **Admin Alerts** page, you can configure the system to send alerts to an e-mail address (see <u>Recipients</u> on page 222). To access the **Admin Alerts** page, click the **Alerts** menu, and then click the **Admin Alerts** tab (see Figure 60).

Figure 60 Admin Alerts Page

Quantum	n. DX <i>i</i> V10	00 Normal Mon Dec 10 20	012 - 3:26:39 AM PST Admin Ticket	(Low Capacity) Logou	
	Admin Alerts Serv	rice Tickets			
Home	Administration A	lerts			Help
Replication					
Status	Click on an Alert	from the table below to display it Last Update	is details.	Summary	
Alerts	Replication		System has resumed the replication service WARNING: System is rebooting	Summary	
Configuration		100 000 04 2012 00.20.40 / 411 01	in a date of the interest of the second		
Utilities					
Wizards					
Мар					
DXI Advanced	Delete				
Reporting	No Administrative	Alert selected for display.			
	9				

The **Admin Alerts** page displays the following information about administration alerts:

- Alert The name of the administration alert.
- Last Update The date when the administration alert was last updated by the system.
- Summary A brief description of the administration alert.

Note: Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.

Use the Admin Alerts page to perform the following tasks:

- To view details about an administration alert, click the alert name. Detailed information about the alert appears in the **Activity Status History** section.
- To delete an administration alert, select it and click **Delete**.

Service Tickets

The DXi V-Series has the capability to automatically detect and resolve problems encountered by the system during operation. If a problem cannot be resolved automatically and requires user intervention or servicing, the system generates a service ticket.

A service ticket contains detailed information about the problem and, if appropriate, steps you can take to resolve it. If the DXi V-Series detects that the problem is resolved, the system automatically closes the service ticket. You can also manually close a service ticket after the problem is corrected.

Note: Tickets that are not resolved are generated again after 24 hours.

See the following sections for more information about service tickets:

- Service Ticket Priority
- <u>Recommended Actions</u>
- Working With Service Tickets

Service Ticket Priority

The system assigns each service ticket a priority based on the criticality of the problem that caused the system to generate the ticket. There are three priority levels:

- Low A minor problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but the operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are not significantly affected.
- **Middle** A serious problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but it does not necessarily need to be fixed immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series may be degraded.
- **High** A critical problem has occurred and needs to be resolved immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are degraded, and there is a risk of system failure or data loss.

Recommended Actions	If appropriate, a service ticket includes recommended actions. The recommended actions provide instructions for resolving the problem that caused the system to generate the ticket. Perform the recommended actions to try to resolve the problem before contacting Quantum customer support. If you are able to resolve the problem, you can close the service ticket.				
	Note: The recommended actions should be performed by a user who is familiar with operating the DXi V-Series.				
	Note: For DXi V1000 Standard Edition users, documentation, community support, and other resources are available through Forum V (<u>http://www.quantum.com/forumv</u>), Quantum's online support forum for virtualization products. Quantum customer support options are available for DXi V-Series Enterprise Edition users. To learn more about upgrading to Enterprise Edition, contact your Quantum Sales Representative.				
Working With Service Tickets	The Service Tickets page allows you to view and work with service tickets. To access the Service Tickets page, click the Alerts menu, and then click				

Figure 61 Service Tickets Page

Quantum.		Xi V 100 0		Norma	<mark>1)</mark> Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:24:17 PM PST	Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator	He
Home	Admin Ale	rts Service	Tickets				Help	7
Replication			icket fr	om the ta	able below to show its details, sen	d email or change its status.		1
Status	Ticket	Request ID	State	Priority	Last Update	Details		
Alerts	1	1035200031		high		DXi0: General DXi0 Software : Communication failure		
	2	1035200031	open	middle	Mon Dec 17 2012 - 09:48:01 AM PST	Space Manager daemon : System resource warning		1.17
Configuration								
Utilities								
Wizards								
Мар								11
map								
	Clos	se All Sho	w Ticke	ts Oper	Get individual ticket	Apply		
NX Advanced No Service Ticket selected for display.								
								_

The **Service Tickets** page displays the following information about open service tickets:

- Ticket The service ticket number.
- Request ID The Request ID of the ticket.
- State The current status of the service ticket (Open or Closed).
- **Priority** The priority level of the service ticket (Low, Middle, or High).
- Last Update The date when the service ticket was last updated by the system.
- Details A brief description of the service ticket.
- Close All Click to close all open service tickets.
- Show Tickets Select an option to display Open tickets, Closed tickets, or All tickets.
- **Get individual ticket** To display a specific ticket in the list, enter a ticket number and click **Apply**.

Note: Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.

Use the Service Tickets page to perform the following tasks:

- View details for a service ticket, including recommended actions (see <u>Viewing a Service Ticket</u> on page 120).
- Add information to a service ticket (see <u>Modifying a Service Ticket</u> on page 122).
- Send a service ticket to an e-mail address (see <u>Sending a Service</u> <u>Ticket</u> on page 123).
- Close a service ticket that has been resolved (see <u>Closing a Service</u> <u>Ticket</u> on page 124).

Viewing a Service Ticket

View a service ticket to see detailed information about the problem that caused the system to generate the ticket and to view recommended actions.

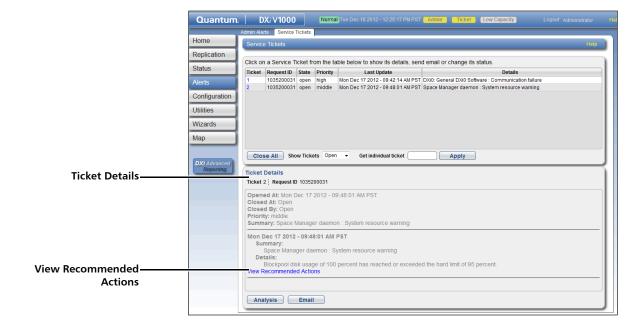
To view a service ticket:

1 In the list of service tickets, click the ticket number.

The **Ticket Details** section at the bottom of the page displays information about the service ticket, including the time the ticket was opened and closed, the ticket status, and detailed information about the problem (see <u>Figure 62</u>).

Note: The time indicated in the service ticket may not match the DXi V-Series system time.

Figure 62 Ticket Details



2 (Optional) Click **View Recommended Actions** to view instructions for resolving the problem.

The recommended actions display in a new Web browser window (see <u>Figure 63</u>). Follow the instructions to resolve the problem. When you are finished, click the close button **[x]** on the upper right corner of the window. Figure 63 Recommended Actions

IF	THEN				
The device is approaching a loo disk space condition:	v available Increase storage capacity by freeing up disk sp	ace (deleting or moving files) or by adding additional disk capacity.			
The device is critically low on a disk space:	vailable Increase storage capacity by freeing up disk sp	ace (deleting or moving files) or by adding additional disk capacity.			
The blockpool disk usage has exceeded a Increase storage capacity by freeing up disk space (by deleting or moving files) or by adding additional disk capacity. soft or hard limit:					
The problem is <u>NOT</u> resolved:	The problem is NOT resolved: Contact the Quantum Technical Assistance Center.				
	In the USA: 1+400-284-5101 UK, France and Germany: 00800 4 QUANTUM EMEA: +49 6131 3241 1164 / Asia Pacific: +603 7953 3010				
	On the Web:	http://www.quantum.com /support			
Print Document Close Window					

Modifying a Service Ticket

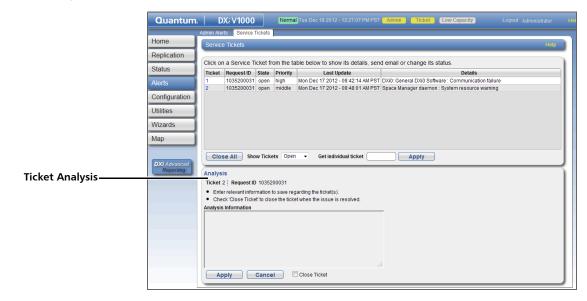
Modify a service ticket to add additional information to the ticket, for example, troubleshooting steps you have taken or a record of calls made to Quantum customer support. The additional information is saved with the service ticket and remains associated with the ticket even after it is closed.

To modify a service ticket:

- 1 In the list of service tickets, click the ticket number.
- 2 Click Analysis at the bottom of the page.

The **Ticket Analysis** section displays at the bottom of the page (see Figure 64).

Figure 64 Ticket Analysis



- **3** In the **Analysis Information** box, enter all relevant information about actions taken to resolve the issue.
- 4 Click Apply.

Sending a Service Ticket

Send a service ticket to send the ticket details to an e-mail address. You can also add optional comments to the e-mail.

Note: To enable the DXi V-Series to send e-mail, you must specify an outgoing e-mail server (see <u>Server</u> on page 227).

To send a service ticket:

- 1 In the list of service tickets, click the ticket number.
- 2 Click Email at the bottom of the page.

The **Email Ticket Information** section displays at the bottom of the page (see Figure 65).

Chapter 7: DXi V-Series Alerts Service Tickets

Figure 65 Email Ticket Information

	Quantum.	DXi V10	00	Norma	Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:28:03 PM PST	Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator H	
		dmin Alerts Ser	ice Tickets					
	Home	Service Tickets					Help	
	Replication	Click on a Sanit	o Tiekot f	rom the tr	able below to show its details, send	l omail ar change its status		
	Status	Ticket Request			Last Update	Details		
	Alerts	1 1035200	031 open	high	Mon Dec 17 2012 - 09:42:14 AM PST	DXI0: General DXI0 Software : Communication failure Space Manager daemon : System resource warning		
	Configuration							
	Utilities							
	Wizards							
	Мар							
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Close All Email Ticket In	ormatio		Get individual ticket	Apply		
		Ticket 2 Reque						
Email Ticket		 Enter the ema Enter an optio 			vish to send the ticket details. uded.			
		Email Recipient						
		Comment						
		Send	Canc	el				

- **3** In the **Email Recipient** box, enter the e-mail address where you want to send the ticket details.
- 4 (Optional) In the **Comment** box, enter additional information to send with the ticket.
- 5 Click Send.

Closing a Service Ticket

Close a service ticket if the problem the caused the system to generate the ticket is resolved. You can also close all service tickets that are currently open.

Note: You can still view and modify a ticket after it has been closed.

To close all service tickets that are currently open, below the list of service tickets, click **Close All**.

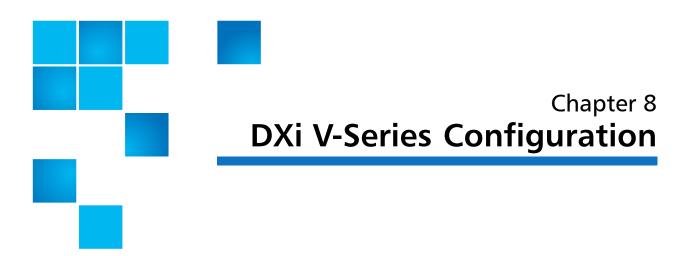
To close a single service ticket:

- 1 In the list of service tickets, click the ticket number.
- 2 Click Analysis at the bottom of the page.

The **Ticket Analysis** section displays at the bottom of the page (see Figure 64).

- **3** Select the **Close Ticket** check box.
- 4 Click Apply.

Chapter 7: DXi V-Series Alerts Service Tickets



The **Configuration** page allows you to configure the features of the DXi V-Series, including storage presentation, data replication, system settings, and notifications.

To access the **Configuration** page, click the **Configuration** menu.

The **Configuration** page contains the following tabs:

- <u>NAS</u>
- <u>Replication</u>
- OST (including DXi Accent with OST)
- <u>Scheduler</u>
- <u>System</u>
- <u>Notifications</u>
- <u>Contacts</u>

NAS

The **NAS** page allows you to configure the DXi V-Series to present its storage capacity as NAS (network attached storage) shares that are compatible with standard backup applications. You can create NAS

shares for use with Windows or Linux networks. You can also join the DXi V-Series to a Windows domain or workgroup and manage users.

Note: The NAS wizard provides guided assistance for configuring NAS shares (see <u>DXi V-Series Configuration Wizards</u> on page 25).

Caution: Caution: Filenames on NAS shares are limited to a length of 256 bytes. If a filename uses Japanese characters, the filename can be no longer than 85 characters. This is because each Japanese character is represented by 3 bytes.

To access the **NAS** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **NAS** tab.

The NAS page contains the following tabs:

- <u>NAS Summary</u>
- <u>Windows Domain</u>
- Share Access
- Advanced Setting

NAS Summary

The **NAS Summary** page allows you to manage NAS shares on the DXi V-Series. You can view information about existing shares, add or edit shares, and delete shares.

To access the NAS Summary page, on the NAS page, click the Summary tab (see Figure 66).

Figure 66 NAS Summary Page

uantum.		Xi V1000 Replication C	ST Sched	ormal Thu Dec 13 2012 uler System Notifi	- 6:35:24 AM PS		Ticket	Low Capacity Logout	
e	Summai			,	ed Setting	aus			
lication	_	hares List	bonnam e	nare / loopee / narane	oootang				He
tus Shares 4 i Maximum 128 i NFS 2 i CIFS 2									
ts	Snare	s 4 : Maxim Share Name	Protocol	Export Path	Permissions	Access	Deduplication	Replication	Description
figuration		for vmPRO				All hosts	Enabled	Configure	Description
iguration	Hŏ	NAS1	CIFS	NAS1	Read & Write	All users	Enabled	Enabled Send Sync ID: NAS1	
ies		NAS2	CIFS	NAS2	Read & Write	All users	Enabled	Enabled Receive Sync ID: NAS2	
		NAS3		/Q/shares/NAS3	Read & Write	All hosts	Enabled	Enabled	
Advanced Reporting									
reporting									
	A	dd	Edit	Delete					
L									

Use the NAS page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about existing NAS shares (see <u>NAS Shares List</u> on page 129).
- Add a new NAS share to the system (see <u>Adding a NAS Share</u> on page 130).
- Edit properties for an existing NAS share (see <u>Editing a NAS Share</u> on page 132).
- Delete a NAS share from the system (see <u>Deleting a NAS Share</u> on page 134).

NAS Shares List

The **NAS Shares List** section displays the following information for all NAS shares on the DXi V-Series:

- Shares The number of shares that have been added to the system.
- **Maximum** The maximum number of shares that can be added to the system.
- **NFS** The number of existing shares configured to use the NFS protocol (for Linux networks).
- **CIFS** The number of existing shares configured to use the CIFS protocol (for Windows networks).
- Share Name The name of the share.

• Protocol - The protocol (CIFS or NFS) the share is configured to use.

For NFS shares, the **Protocol** column displays the commit type of the share (**sync** for synchronous or **async** for asynchronous). For information about changing the commit type of NFS shares, see the *DXi-Series Command Line Interface (CLI) Guide* (6-67081).

- **Export Path** The export path of the share (different for CIFS and NFS shares).
- Permissions The permissions in use on the share (Read & Write or Read Only).
- Access The access type of the share (all hosts or specific users).
- **Deduplication** The data deduplication state of the share (**Enabled** or **Disabled**).
- **Replication** The current state of replication for the share:
 - Enabled Replication is enabled.
 - Send/Receive Sync ID Directory/File Based Replication is enabled.
 - Configure Click to configure replication for the share (see <u>Editing a NAS Share</u> on page 132)
 - Scheduled Replication is scheduled for the share. Click to view or modify the schedule (see <u>Scheduling a Share for Replication</u> on page 186).
- **Description** A brief description of the NAS share (if available).

Note: Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.

Note: Click the Information button [i] next to a share to display detailed information about the share and recent replication activity.

Adding a NAS Share

Add a NAS share to present the storage capacity of the DXi V-Series as a NAS share that is compatible with standard backup applications. You can add up to 128 shares. When you add a share, you must specify

whether it uses the NFS protocol (for Linux networks) or the CIFS protocol (for Windows networks).

Note: If you are adding a CIFS share for use with a Windows network, you must configure the Windows domain before adding the new share (see <u>Windows Domain</u> on page 135).

To add a NAS share:

1 Click Add.

The Add NAS Share page displays (see Figure 67).

Figure 67 Add NAS Share Page	Quantum.	DX: V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 636:44 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He
		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
		Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting
	Replication	Add NAS Share Help
	Status	
	Alerts	NAS Share Settings Replication Settings
	Configuration	Name Send Send Encle replication to the replication target DXi
	Utilities Wizards	Options Enable Directory/File Based replication to target Hide from network browsing ?
	Мар	☑ Enable deduplication Receive Cannot enable/disable deduplication once share is created. □ Enable Directory/File Based replication to this DXi
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Export Protocol Sync ID ? © CIFS (Windows network) Access CLocked © Unlocked
		NFS (UNIXLinux network) * Required Field
		Apply Reset Cancel

- 2 Under NAS Share Settings, enter information about the share:
 - Name Enter the name of the NAS share.
 - **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the share.
 - Hide from network browsing (CIFS shares only) Select the check box to hide the share from network browsing. If selected, you cannot see the share when browsing the network.
 - Enable data deduplication Select the check box to enable data deduplication. Quantum recommends that you enable data deduplication to optimize disk usage.

Note: Data deduplication is enabled by default. You cannot enable or disable data deduplication after the share is added. If data duplication is disabled, then data compression is also disabled.

- Export Protocol Select the export protocol for the share:
 - **CIFS** Select the CIFS option to use the share on a Windows network.
 - NFS Select the NFS option to use the share on a UNIX or Linux network.
- 3 (Optional) Under Replication Settings, specify replication settings.

For more information about configuring replication for a share, or to set up replication for the share at a later time, see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Replication</u> on page 69.

4 Click Apply.

Note: When you create a CIFS share, the initial permissions are the same as the default permissions for a Windows 2003 share with the addition of an ACE (Access Control Entry) that permits full access to the share for all authenticated users. Administrators can choose to remove this full access ACE, set up custom permissions, or leave the ACL (Access Control List) as it is if the server is set up in a fully trusted environment.

Editing a NAS Share

Edit a NAS share to modify the settings for the share, for example, to change the description of the share or to select different options.

To edit a NAS share:

1 Select the share and click Edit.

The **Edit NAS Share & Replication Settings** page displays (see Figure 68).

Figure 68 Edit NAS Share & Replication Settings Page

Quantum	Normal Thu Dec 13 2012-640 20 AM PST Admin Ticket (Low Capacity) Logout Administrator in NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
Home	Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting
Replication	Edit NAS Share & Replication Settings
Status Alerts	NAS Share Settings Replication Settings
Configuration	Name NAS3 Send Description Image: Comparison of the replication to the replication target DXi Image: Comparison of the replication target DXi
Utilities Wizards	Options Enable Directory/File Based replication to target Sync ID (MAS3 ?)
Мар	Commit Type sync Receive Deduptication Enabled ① Enabled ①
DXi Advanced Reporting	Export Protocol Sync ID NAS3 Access Locked @ Unlocked Access Locked @ Unlocked
	Apply Reset Cancel

2 Under NAS Share Settings, enter information about the share:

Note: If you are editing a share, only the Description, Enforce read-only access, Hide from network browsing, and Allow all users to access this share options can be changed.

- Description (Optional) Enter a brief description of the share.
- Enforce read-only access Select the check box to make the share read only. If selected, you cannot write to the share.
- Hide from network browsing (CIFS shares only) Select the check box to hide the share from network browsing. If selected, you cannot see the share when browsing the network.
- Allow all users/hosts to access this share Select this check box to allow all users (CIFS shares) or hosts (NFS shares) to access the share.

Or clear the check box to allow only specified users or hosts to access the share. To add a user or host to the access list, click Add. Specify the Workgroup User (CIFS shares) or the Hostname or IP Address (NFS shares) and the associated permissions (Read Only or Read & Write), and then click Apply. **Note:** To modify the users that are available in the **Workgroup User** list, see <u>Share Access</u> on page 138.

- **Note:** After you add a user or host to the access list, you cannot change their permissions. Instead, select the user or host in the access list and click **Delete** to remove them from the list. Then add the user or host again with the correct permissions.
- 3 (Optional) Under Replication Settings, specify replication settings.

For more information about configuring replication for a share, or to set up replication for the share at a later time, see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Replication</u> on page 69.

4 Click Apply.

Note: If you modify a NAS share that uses the CIFS protocol, you must restart the CIFS service for the changes to take effect. To restart the CIFS service, first disjoin the Windows workgroup, then join it again (see <u>Windows Domain</u> on page 135). Restarting the CIFS service will close all active connections to the share. Most Windows workstations will automatically reconnect, but some applications may be affected.

Deleting a NAS Share

Delete a NAS share if it is no longer needed. When you delete a share, all data stored on the share is lost, and any schedules associated with the share are deleted.

Note: If you delete a share configured for Directory/File Based Replication on the source DXi, the share is *not* automatically deleted on the target DXi. If you do not want to retain the share on the target DXi, you can manually delete it.

To delete a NAS share:

1 Select the share and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple shares to delete at once.

2 Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

Windows Domain

The **Windows Domain** page allows you to join the DXi V-Series to a Windows workgroup or a Windows domain using **SMB**. To use a NAS share configured for the CIFS protocol on a Windows network, you must first join the DXi V-Series to a workgroup or a domain. After you join the DXi V-Series to a workgroup or a domain, CIFS shares are available for use on the Windows network.

To access the Windows Domain page, on the NAS page, click the Windows Domain tab (see <u>Figure 69</u>).

Figure 69 Windows Domain	Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 6:42:43 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator H
Page		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home	Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting
	Replication	Windows Domain Help
	Status	This DXi has not joined a Windows Domain
	Alerts	
	Configuration	* Domain Type Select a Type 🔹
	Utilities	* Domain/Workgroup Name
	Wizards	Primary Domain Controller
	Мар	Use DNS Discovery
		Specify Address
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Organization Unit
		* Administrator Name
		* Administrator Password
		* Required Field
		Apply

Use the Windows Domain page to perform the following tasks:

- Join the DXi V-Series to a Windows workgroup (see <u>Joining a</u> <u>Windows Workgroup</u> on page 136).
- Join the DXi V-Series to a Windows domain (see <u>Joining a Windows</u> <u>Domain</u> on page 136).
- Remove the DXi V-Series from a Windows workgroup or domain (see <u>Disjoining a Workgroup or Domain</u> on page 137).

Joining a Windows Workgroup

Join a Windows workgroup to add the DXi V-Series to a workgroup on a Windows network. After you join a workgroup, CIFS shares are available for use on the Windows network.

To join a Windows workgroup:

- 1 Enter the following information about the Windows domain:
 - Domain Type Select Workgroup.
 - **Domain/Workgroup Name** Enter the workgroup name.

The workgroup name can be the name of an existing workgroup or a new workgroup (for example, **Workgroup** or **Sales**).

2 Click Apply.

Note: When an SMB server is joined to a workgroup, share security is managed directly from the remote management console. For a CIFS share, security is provided through the read only or read/ write access to the share. By default, when a CIFS share is created, the default security setting allows access for all users. Any access restrictions on individual users can be managed by editing a share on the NAS Summary page (see <u>Editing a NAS</u> <u>Share</u> on page 132).

Joining a Windows Domain

Join a Windows domain to add the DXi V-Series to a Windows network using Active Directory. After you join a domain, CIFS shares are available for use on the Windows network.

Before joining a Windows domain, make sure the date and time on the DXi V-Series is correct and is synchronized with the Active Directory Services (ADS) server (see <u>Date & Time</u> on page 211). The time difference between the DXi V-Series and the ADS server (domain controller) must be less than 300 seconds. Quantum recommends using the same NTP server for the DXi V-Series and the ADS server to keep them synchronized.

To join a Windows domain:

1 Enter the following information about the Windows domain:

- Domain Type Select Active Directory.
- **Domain/Workgroup Name** Enter the domain name.
- **Primary Domain Controller** Select an option for the Primary Domain Controller (PDC):
 - Use DNS Discovery Discover the PDC automatically.
 - **Specify Address** Enter the fully qualified name or the IP address of the PDC.
- **Organization Unit** (Optional) Enter the name of the organizational unit in the domain.

The DXi V-Series will become a member of this organization.

• Administrator Name - Enter Administrator or any user that has the right to join the domain.

By default, any user belonging to the **Administrators** group or the **Domain Admins** group has the right to join the domain. In addition, any user can join the domain if they are specifically delegated this right by a member of the **Administrators** group.

- Administrator Password Enter the password for the user entered above.
- 2 Click Apply.
- **Note:** When the system is joined to the Active Directory domain, share security is managed by the MMC (Microsoft Management Console) that is running on the domain controller. By default, when a CIFS share is created, the default security setting allows access for all users. Any access restrictions on individual users must be managed from the MMC.

Disjoining a Workgroup or Domain

Disjoin a workgroup or a domain to remove the DXi V-Series from a Windows workgroup or domain. After you disjoin the workgroup or domain, CIFS shares are no longer available for use on the Windows network

To disjoin a workgroup or domain, click **Disjoin**.

Chapter 8: DXi V-Series Configuration NAS

Share Access

The **Share Access** page allows you to manage workgroup users when the DXi V-Series is joined to a Windows workgroup, or manage share administrators when the DXi V-Series is joined to a Windows domain using Active Directory. You can add users or administrators, change user privileges, and delete users or administrators. Available users or administrators can be granted access to NAS shares configured for the CIFS protocol.

Note: You must join a Windows workgroup or domain before you can add workgroup users or share administrators (see <u>Windows</u> <u>Domain</u> on page 135). The **Share Access** page is different depending on whether the DXi is joined to a workgroup or domain.

To access the **Share Access** page, on the **NAS** page, click the **Share Access** tab (see <u>Figure 70</u> and <u>Figure 71</u>).

Replication CIFS Share Access List Status Alerts Configuration Username Utilities Vizards Map No DX1.Advanced Reporting Edit	Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting
Alerts Workgroup Users Configuration Username Administrator Privileges Utilities User1 No Wizards Map DXI Advanced Map	Replication	CIFS Share Access List
Configuration Utilities Wizards Map DXI Advanced	-	Workgroup Users
Utilities Wizards Map		
Map DXI Advanced Reporting		
DXI Advanced	Wizards	
Reporting	Мар	
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Add Edit Delete

Figure 70 Share Access Page (Windows Workgroup)

Figure 71 Share Access Page (Active Directory)

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 6:45:11 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Hama	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
Home	Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting	
Replication	CIFS Share Access List	Help
Status	Share Administrators	
Alerts	User or Group Name	
Configuration	DXI Domain Admins	
Utilities		
Wizards		
Мар		
DXI Advanced Reporting		
	Add Delete	

Use the **Share Access** page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about workgroup users or share administrators (see <u>Workgroup Users or Share Administrators</u> on page 139).
- Add a workgroup user or a share administrator (see <u>Adding a</u> <u>Workgroup User or Share Administrator</u> on page 140).
- Edit a workgroup user (see Editing a Workgroup User on page 141).
- Delete a workgroup user or a share administrator (see <u>Deleting a</u> <u>Workgroup User or Share Administrator</u> on page 143).

Workgroup Users or Share Administrators

If the DXi V-Series is joined to a Windows workgroup, the **Workgroup Users** section displays the following information about workgroup users:

- Username The name of the workgroup user.
- Administrator Privileges The privileges of the workgroup user (Yes if the user has administrator privileges, No if they do not.)
- Description A brief description of the workgroup user (if available).

If the DXi V-Series is joined to a Windows domain using Active Directory, the **Share Administrators** section displays the following information about share administrators:

• User or Group Name - The fully qualified name of the user or group.

Adding a Workgroup User or Share Administrator

Add a workgroup user or share administrator to be able to grant that user or administrator access to CIFS shares.

Windows Workgroup

To add a workgroup user for a Windows workgroup:

1 Click Add.

The Add Workgroup User page displays (see Figure 72).

Figure 72 Add Workgroup	Quantum. DX;V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 659 48 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrat	tor Help
User Page	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Home Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting Replication Add Workgroup User Status Status Status Status	Help
	Status • User Name Alerts • Des Nord Configuration • Confirm Password Utilities • Confirm Password Wizards • Required Field Map Apply Reset Cancei • Cancei	

- **2** Enter information about the workgroup user:
 - User Name Enter the name of the workgroup user.
 - Password Enter the password for the workgroup user.
 - Confirm Password Enter the password again to confirm it.
 - Description (Optional) Enter a brief description of the workgroup user.
 - Grant Administrator Privileges Select the check box to add the workgroup user to the Windows Administrators group.

This allows the workgroup user to override certain permissions settings and prevents the workgroup user from being locked out of shares or directories.

3 Click Apply.

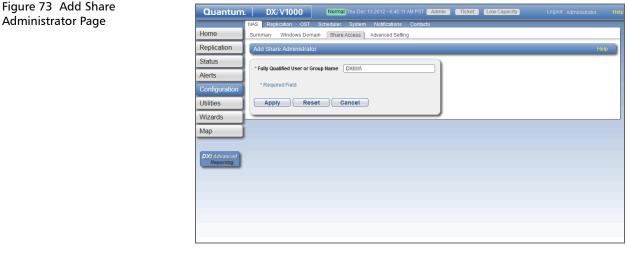
After you create a workgroup user, you can grant the user access to a NAS share (see <u>Editing a NAS Share</u> on page 132).

Windows Domain

To add a share administrator for a Windows domain:

1 Click Add.

The Add Share Administrator page displays (see Figure 73).



- 2 Enter the Fully Qualified User or Group Name of the share administrator.
- 3 Click Apply.

Use the MMC (Microsoft Management Console) to manage users (see <u>ADS Share Permissions</u> on page 143).

Editing a Workgroup User

Edit a workgroup user to change the user's password or description, or to change the user's administrator privileges.

Note: You cannot edit a share administrator. Instead, delete the share administrator, then add a new share administrator.

To edit a workgroup user:

1 Select the user and click Edit.

The Edit Workgroup User page displays (see Figure 74).

e 74 Edit Workgroup	Quantum. DX; V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 7.02.01 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator	Help
age	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
-	Home Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting	
	Replication Edit Workgroup User Help	
	Status User Name User 1	
	Alerts Password	
	Configuration Confirm Password Description	
	Utilities Grant Administrator Privileges	
	Wizards Apply Reset Cancel	
	Мар	
	DXI Advanced Reporting	

2 Enter information about the workgroup user:

Note: If you are editing a workgroup user, you cannot change the User Name.

- User Name (Optional) Select a different workgroup user to edit.
- Password Enter the password for the workgroup user.
- Confirm Password Enter the password again to confirm it.
- Description (Optional) Enter a brief description of the workgroup user.
- Grant Administrator Privileges Select the check box to add the workgroup user to the Windows Administrators group.

Figure User P

This allows the workgroup user to override certain permissions settings and prevents the workgroup user from being locked out of shares or directories.

3 Click Apply.

Deleting a Workgroup User or Share Administrator

Delete a workgroup user or share administrator if the user or administrator no longer needs to access CIFS shares.

To delete a workgroup user or share administrator, select the user or administrator and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple users or administrators to delete at once.

ADS Share Permissions

To manage user access to CIFS shares when the DXi V-Series is joined to a Windows domain, use the MMC (Microsoft Management Console). Log onto the MMC on the domain controller and access a share's properties to set share permissions for users.

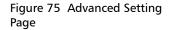
Note: In some cases, when you view file permissions on a Windows system, you will not see the user and group information. Instead you will see the SID (security ID) which appears as a series of numbers. This occurs when you move files (for example, using a backup utility or DOS **xcopy**) from one system to another system, and the user and group from the source system do not exist on the target system.

> Often users and groups are unique to a particular scope, such as a Windows system or an ADS domain. As a result, some assigned permissions might not be available on the target system because the associated user and group do not exist there. However, common groups (for example, **Administrators**, **Users**, and **Everyone**) are recognized on most Windows systems and domains.

Advanced Setting

The **Advanced Setting** page allows you to enable or disable advanced SMB settings.

To access the **Advanced Setting** page, on the **NAS** page, click the **Advanced Setting** tab (see <u>Figure 75</u>).



Quantum	I. DX: V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 7:05:03 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Summary Windows Domain Share Access Advanced Setting Advanced Setting	
Replication	Advanced Setting	Help
Status Alerts Configuration Utilities Wizards	SMB Settings Image: Deportunistic Locking Note: System performance may decrease if Opportunistic Locking is disabled. Enable SMB Server signing Apply Reset	
Map DXI Advanced Reporting		

To enable or disable advanced SMB settings:

- 1 Select the check box to enable, or clear the check box to disable, the following settings:
 - Enable Opportunistic Locking (Enabled by default) Opportunistic locking lets clients lock files and locally cache information without the risk of another user changing the file. This increases performance for many file operations, but it may decrease performance in other operations because the server that grants the opportunistic lock must manage the breaking of that lock when another user requests access to the file.

Note: System performance may decrease if **Opportunistic** Locking is disabled.

• Enable SMB Server signing - (Disabled by default) SMB server signing improves security on Windows networks by requiring clients to provide a security signature to connect to a server. If the DXi V-Series is joined to a Windows domain that is

configured to require signing, you should enable SMB server signing.

2 Click Apply.

Replication

The **Replication Configuration** page allows you to configure the DXi V-Series to act as a replication source or target. A target system can *receive* data from 1 source (DXi V1000) or up to 10 sources (DXi V4000). A source system can *send* data to one target.

Note: For more information about data replication, or to perform data replication, see <u>DXi V-Series Replication</u> on page 69.

To access the **Replication Configuration** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **Replication** tab.

The Replication Configuration page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Replication Send</u>
- <u>Replication Receive</u>

Replication Send

The **Replication Send** page allows you to specify the target system the DXi V-Series will send replicated data to. You must specify the replication target before you enable replication for a NAS share. When replication is enabled for a share, replicated data is sent to the target system during scheduled or manual replication. Optionally, you can choose to encrypt replication data or specify a constant throttle to limit the network bandwidth used for replication.

Note: For more information about enabling and scheduling replication for a share, see <u>Send NAS</u> on page 77.

To access the **Replication Send** page, on the **Replication Configuration** page, click the **Send** tab (see <u>Figure 76</u>). Figure 76 Replication Send Page

Quantum	. DX: V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 7:06 42 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Send Receive	
Replication	Replication Target Settings	Help
Status Alerts Configuration	Target DXI ? Replication Service Ready @excep ? Target Hostname or IP Address 10 ?	
Utilities Wizards Map	Target Hostname or IP Address 10 ? Source IP Address 0.0.0.0 V Use encryption 128-bit 128-bit 25-bit	
DXI Advanced Reporting	Enable system throttling Replication Throttle None KB/s G32 KB/s to 125 MB/s) ?	

To specify the replication target:

1 If you have previously specified a replication target, you must pause the replication service before changing the target.

Replication Service displays the replication status of the DXi V-Series. Click **Pause** to pause replication activity. Click **Resume** to resume replication activity.

Note: For a detailed description of all possible replication statuses, see <u>Replication Overview</u> on page 62.

- 2 In the Target Hostname or IP Address box, enter the hostname or IP address of the system that will receive the replicated data.
 - **Note:** When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the **Network** page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

3 In the **Source IP Address** field, enter the IP address that is used to uniquely identify the source DXi to the target. This may be different than the actual network IP address of the source DXi.

If the target system is at DXi 2.1 Software or higher, the **Source IP Address** field is not required. If the target system is at DXi 2.0.1.x Software or below, then you must enter the IP address by which the target system recognizes the source system. The default value is **0.0.0.0**.

Note: The **Source IP Address** field does not accept fully qualified domain names. You must enter a valid IP address. Make sure this IP address is configured in the allowable sources list on the target DXi.

- **Note:** When configuring segmented network interfaces, if the source DXi replication, data, and management interfaces are on the same subnet, you must add a host route on the source DXi to make sure the replication interface is correctly selected when replicating data to the target DXi (see <u>Understanding Interface Routing</u> on page 206).
- 4 (Optional) Leave the Use Encryption check box selected to enable encryption when sending replication data to the target system. Or clear the Use Encryption check box to disable encryption when sending replication data to the target system.

If encryption is enabled, select an encryption strength (**128-bit** or **256-bit**). Using 256-bit encryption (default) provides a stronger level of security but may have an impact on system performance in some situations.

Caution: Select 128-bit encryption if you are sending data to a DXi running a system software version prior to DXi 2.1 Software.

Note: Encryption is enabled by default. However, for best performance, if your data network is already secured, you should clear the **Use Encryption** check box.

5 (Optional) Select the **Enable system throttling** check box to enable a constant replication throttle for the system. Or clear the **Enable**

system throttling check box to disable the constant replication throttle.

When a constant throttle is enabled, the DXi limits the amount of data it sends during source replication so that it does not exceed the specified bandwidth.

Specify the maximum allowed bandwidth by entering a value in the **Replication Throttle** box and select the units in the drop-down box (**KB/s** or **MB/s**). The lowest value you can set is 32 KB/s. The highest value you can set is 125 MB/s.

Caution: Do not set the maximum allowed bandwidth to a value that is lower than necessary. If the maximum allowed bandwidth is set to the lowest value, large replication jobs may fail.

Note: To vary the replication throttle rate over time, use the **Configuration > Scheduler** page (see <u>Scheduler</u> on page 181). Do *not* enable a constant throttle if a throttle schedule is configured. The scheduled replication throttling bandwidth settings take precedence over the constant throttle value. (The currently active replication throttle rate appears on the **Home** page under **Current Activity**.)

6 Click Apply.

7 If necessary, click **Resume** to resume the replication service.

Replication Receive

The **Replication Receive** page allows you to specify the source system the DXi V-Series will receive replicated data from. You must add a source system to the list of allowed replication sources before you configure the source to send replicated data to the DXi V-Series. The DXi V-Series can receive replicated data from 1 source (DXi V1000) or up to 10 sources (DXi V4000). You can also specify the number of received snapshots that are retained for each source.

Note: For more information about working with received snapshots, see <u>Receive NAS</u> on page 85.

Note: It is typical for the target DXi to require additional disk space for replication data compared to the source DXi. This is because complete replication data is sent to the target before old data is deleted. For optimal performance, if the DXi is a replication target, Quantum recommends keeping the amount of free space at 20% or more (see <u>Disk Usage</u> on page 107).

To access the **Replication Receive** page, on the **Replication** Configuration page, click the Receive tab (see Figure 77).

77 Replication Receive	Quantum. DX: V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 7:10:38 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Help
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home Send Receive
	Replication Source Settings Help
	Status
	Alerts
	Configuration Vou have configured the maximum number of allowed replication source DXis. Please contact Quantum Customer Service I/ you require additional replication source DXis to be addeed to this list.
	Utilities Source Hostname or IP Address Add
	Wizards Replication Source DXi Actual Data Received Average Receive Rate
	Map 10 0.00 MB 0.00 MB/s
	Delete
	DXI Advanced Reporting
	Maximum Received Snapshots
	Maximum Snapshots Per Share 10 -
	Apply

Use the **Replication Receive** page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about allowed replication source systems (see Source DXis on page 150).
- Add a system to the list of allowed replication sources (see Adding a Replication Source on page 150).
- Delete a system from the list of allowed replication sources (see Deleting a Replication Source on page 150).
- Specify the maximum number of received snapshots to retain for each source (see Maximum Received Snapshots on page 151).

Figure Page

Source DXis

The **Replication Receive** page displays the following information for each source DXi:

- **Replication Source DXi** The IP address of the source system that is allowed to send data to the DXi V-Series.
- Actual Data Received The amount of data actually received over the network during replication or failback.
- Average Receive Rate The average receive rate (in MB/s) of data received over the network during replication or failback (Actual Data Received divided by the amount of time required to complete replication or failback).
- **Note:** The statistics on the **Replication Receive** page are for each source DXi rather than a cumulative total for all sources as is displayed on the **Home** page.

Adding a Replication Source

Add a system to the list of replication sources to allow it to send replicated data to the DXi V-Series. You can specify 1 replication source (DXi V1000) or up to 10 replication sources (DXi V4000).

To add a replication source:

- In the Source Hostname or IP Address box, enter the hostname or IP address of the system that will send the replicated data to the DXi V-Series.
 - Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the Network page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).
- 2 Click Add.

Deleting a Replication Source

Delete a system from the list of replication sources if it will no longer send replicated data to the DXi V-Series. After the source system is deleted, the DXi V-Series will no longer accept replicated data from that system. To delete a replication source:

- 1 Select the system in the **Source DXis** list.
- 2 Click Delete.
- **Note:** If a source DXi is deleted from the list, its contribution to the cumulative totals on the **Home** page are not removed until you clear **Receive** statistics (see <u>Replication Performance</u> on page 100).

Maximum Received Snapshots

During scheduled or manual data replication, the DXi V-Series receives a snapshot from the source system. A snapshot contains all of the data necessary to fully recover or failback a NAS share to the point in time when the snapshot was saved.

The DXi V-Series can retain up to 24 snapshots for each replicated share. Once the maximum number of snapshots have been saved, the oldest snapshot is deleted to make room for each new snapshot that is received.

To configure the maximum number of received snapshots:

1 In the **Maximum Snapshots Per Share** drop-down box, select the number of snapshots to retain for each replicated share.

The default value is 10. The maximum value is 24.

2 Click Apply.

OST

The **OST** page allows you to configure the DXi V-Series to present its storage capacity as storage servers using OpenStorage (OST) technology. You can add one or more Logical Storage Units (LSUs) to a storage server. Storage servers and LSUs are compatible with backup applications that support OST, such as Symantec NetBackup and Symantec Backup Exec. In addition, OST data can be duplicated (replicated) between DXi systems using NetBackup (see <u>Replicating OST</u> Data on page 152).

To authenticate OST devices on a media server, you must create OST user credentials. After you create the OST user credentials, enter them in the backup application to authenticate OST devices on the media server.

To access the **OST** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **OST** tab.

The **OST** page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Storage Servers</u>
- <u>LSU</u>
- Manage Users
- Manage Remote Users
- Target IP Mapping
- DXi Accent
- OST Client Plug-In

Replicating OST Data

The DXi V-Series can replicate (duplicate) OST data to another DXi using the following methods:

- **Optimized Duplication** With optimized duplication, backup images on a storage server can be replicated to another storage server on a DXi that resides in the same NetBackup domain. The duplication occurs when it is initiated in NetBackup.
- Automatic Image Replication (AIR) If you are using Symantec NetBackup 7.1 or higher, you can configure an LSU for Automatic Image Replication (see <u>Task Overview: Setting Up Automatic Image</u> <u>Replication</u> on page 153). If enabled, data on an LSU is automatically replicated to a remote LSU that resides on a DXi in a different NetBackup domain. The timing of the duplication, as well as the backup images that are duplicated, are determined by the storage lifecycle policies (SLPs) configured in NetBackup.
- **Concurrent Optimized Duplication** For both optimized duplication and Automatic Image Replication, you can optionally enable Concurrent Optimized Duplication. If enabled, as data is written to the storage server, it is simultaneously replicated to the target DXi. When optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication subsequently occurs, the operation is more efficient

because a portion of the required data has already been replicated to the target storage server.

It is important to remember that, with Automatic Image Replication, the local and remote LSUs reside in *different* NetBackup domains. This differs from optimized duplication, which occurs between two LSUs residing within *the same* NetBackup domain.

Note: For more information about configuring the DXi V-Series for optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication, see the *DXi-Series NetBackup and Backup Exec OST Configuration Guide* (6-67079).

Note: For information about configuring NetBackup for optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication (also referred to as duplicating images to a remote master server domain), see the *Symantec NetBackup Administrator's Guide*.

Task Overview: Setting Up Automatic Image Replication

Setting up Automatic Image Replication (AIR) requires that you first configure the target (remote) DXi and then the source DXi (see Figure 78). In addition, you must create storage lifecycle policies (SLPs) in NetBackup that define when the automatic replication occurs and which backup images are duplicated.

To automatically replicate (duplicate) all data on an LSU to a remote LSU that resides on a DXi in a different NetBackup domain:

- 1 On the target system, add the source system to the list of allowed replication sources (see <u>Replication Receive</u> on page 148).
- 2 On the target system, create a local OST user (see <u>Manage Users</u> on page 169).

Caution: On the target system, make sure to create a *local* user on the Configuration > OST > Manage Users page.

3 On the target system, create a storage server and LSU to receive the replicated OST data (see <u>Adding a Storage Server</u> on page 157).

- **Note:** Quantum recommends selecting the **Available Capacity** option when creating an LSU for use with Automatic Image Replication.
- 4 On the source system, specify the target system that will receive the replicated data (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145).
- 5 On the source system, create a remote OST user with the same user name and password that you used in step 2 above (see <u>Manage</u> <u>Remote Users</u> on page 172).

Caution: On the source system, make sure to create a *remote* user on the Configuration > OST > Manage Remote Users page.

6 On the source system, create a storage server and LSU, and enable the LSU for Automatic Image Replication (see <u>Adding a Storage</u> <u>Server</u> on page 157).

For **Remote Storage Server** and **Remote LSU**, make sure to specify the storage server and LSU created in step 3 above. Also, for **Remote User**, make sure to select the remote user created in step 5 above.

7 Configure storage lifecycle policies in NetBackup to control when automatic replication of the LSU occurs (see the *Symantec NetBackup Administrator's Guide*).

Figure 78 Setting Up OST Automatic Image Replication **1** Configure target DXi: • Add allowed replication source. • Create *local* OST user. Create storage server and LSU. Local LSU (Source DXi) **Remote LSU** (Target DXi) Domain 1 Domain 2 **2** Configure source DXi: NetBackup Server NetBackup • Specify replication target. Server • Create *remote* OST user. Create storage server and LSU **3** Create storage lifecycle policies with AIR enabled. (SLPs) on the NetBackup server in each domain to control when duplication occurs and images are

Storage Servers

The **Storage Servers** page allows you to manage OST storage servers on the DXi V-Series. You can view information about existing storage servers, add or edit storage servers, and delete storage servers.

imported.

To access the **Storage Servers** page, on the **OST** page, click the **Storage Servers** tab (see <u>Figure 79</u>).

Figure 79 Storage Servers Page

Quantum	. DX	V1000	Normal	Thu Dec 13 20	012 - 7:16:12 AM	PST Admin	Ticket	Low Capacity	Logout	Administrator	He
	NAS Repli	cation OS1	Scheduler	System N	otifications Co	ontacts					
Home	Storage Sen	vers LSU	Manage Users	Manage R	Remote Users	Target IP Map	pping Accent	OST Client Plug-In			
Replication	Storage Server List Help										
Status	Storage Servers 1 i Maximum Storage Servers 100 i LSUS 1 i OST Service Ready ?										
Alerts	Nar		Max Connec		Active Connec		Backup Images	Optimized D	unlication	Description	51
Configuration	OST1		max connec	300	Active Connec	0	Dackup Inlages	0 Disabled	uplication	Description	11
Utilities											
Wizards											
Мар											
DXI Advanced Reporting											
	Add		dit	elete	?						

Use the Storage Servers page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about existing storage servers (see <u>Storage Server</u> <u>List</u> on page 156).
- Add a new storage server to the system (see <u>Adding a Storage</u> <u>Server</u> on page 157).
- Edit properties for an existing storage server (see Editing a Storage Server on page 161).
- Delete a storage server from the system (see <u>Deleting a Storage</u> <u>Server</u> on page 162).

Storage Server List

The **Storage Server List** displays the following information for all storage servers on the DXi V-Series:

- Storage Servers The number of storage servers that have been added to the system.
- Maximum Storage Servers The maximum number of storage servers that can be added to the system.
- LSUs The number of logical storage units (LSUs) that have been added to the system (see LSU on page 163).

- OST Service The status of the OST service. OST settings can be configured in Ready, Stopped, or Verifying state. The OST server is available for backup only in Ready state.
- Name The name of the storage server.
- LSUs The number of LSUs that have been added to the storage server.
- Max Connections The maximum number of connections allowed to the storage server.
- Active Connections The number of currently active connections to the storage server.
- **Backup Images** The number of backup images on the storage server.
- **Optimized Duplication** That status of Concurrent Optimized Duplication for the storage server (**Enabled** or **Disabled**).
- Description A brief description of the storage server (if available).

Note: Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.

Note: The connections of a storage server that are used equals the data streams plus one for each LSU polling. A backup job may generate more than one data stream if the data can be read in parallel. For example, a policy that is backing up A, B, C, and D drives of a Windows system can generate four data streams in parallel.

Adding a Storage Server

Add a storage server to present the storage capacity of the DXi V-Series as LSUs that are compatible with backup applications that support OST. You can add up to 100 storage servers. When adding a storage server, you must also add an LSU to the storage server. (For more information about LSUs, see <u>LSU</u> on page 163.)

Note: Data on storage servers is always deduplicated.

To add a storage server:

. . . .

1 Click Add.

The Add Storage Server page displays (see Figure 80).

Page Add Storage Server	Quantum.			Thu Dec 13 2012 - 7:42:04 AM PST (t Low Capacity	
raye	Home	NAS Replication OS Storage Servers LSU		System Notifications Contact Manage Remote Users Targ	-	cent OST Client Plug	-In
	Replication	Add Storage Server					Help
	Status	Add Storage Server ?					
	Alerts	* Name					
	Configuration	Description * Max Connections	200		(3 to 65536)		
	Utilities	Enable Concurren		ication	(3 (0 05550)		
	Wizards	Logical Storage Unit					
	Мар	 Available Capacity Specific Capacity 					
	DXi Advanced	LSU Name)	
	Reporting	Physical Capacity	ty 🗌			(1 to 1048576 GB)	
		Description					
		* Remote Storage		on 🕐			
		* Remote L SU Nam	me 🗌	PhysicalLSU)	
		Remote User			*	2	
		* Required Field					
		Apply	Reset C	ancel		J	

- 2 Under Add Storage Server, enter information about the storage server:
 - Name Enter the name of the storage server.

Caution: Do not use an underscore (_) in the name of the storage server.

- **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the storage server.
- Max Connections Enter the maximum number of connections allowed to the storage server (3 to 65536).

Note: Quantum recommends setting **Max Connections** to 300.

• Enable Concurrent Optimized Duplication - Select the check box to enable optimized duplication during OST ingest.

Concurrent Optimized Duplication is disabled by default. If enabled, as data is written to the storage server, it is

simultaneously replicated to the target DXi. When optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication subsequently occurs, the operation is more efficient because a portion of the required data has already been replicated to the target storage server.

Note: To configure the target DXi, see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145.

Note: When Concurrent Optimized Duplication is enabled, all data on the storage server is duplicated, not just the specified images.

- **3** Under **Logical Storage Unit**, select the type of LSU to add to the new storage server:
 - Available Capacity (Recommended for best performance) Select this option to add an LSU that uses the available capacity on the system.

You cannot add an available capacity LSU to a storage server that already contains an LSU. Also, if you add an available capacity LSU to a storage server, you cannot add additional LSUs to that same storage server.

- Note: After you add an LSU that uses the Available Capacity option, you cannot change the LSU to use the Specific Capacity option. Instead, you must delete the LSU, then add a new LSU and choose the Specific Capacity option (see <u>Deleting an LSU</u> on page 169).
- **Specific Capacity** Select this option to specify the physical capacity of the LSU, and then enter the following information.
 - LSU Name Enter the name of the LSU.
 - **Physical Capacity** Enter the physical capacity of the LSU (1 to 1048576 GB).

Note: Quantum recommends setting LSUs to maximum size (1048576 GB) because spanning them on a backup is not possible.

- 4 (Optional) In the **Description** box, enter a brief description of the LSU.
- **5** (Optional) Select the **Enable Automatic Image Replication** check box to automatically replicate (duplicate) data on the LSU to a remote LSU on another DXi.

Automatic Image Replication (AIR) is disabled by default. If enabled, data on an LSU is automatically replicated to a remote LSU that resides on a DXi in a different NetBackup domain. The timing of the duplication, as well as the backup images that are duplicated, are determined by the storage lifecycle policies (SLPs) configured in NetBackup.

OST AIR requires NetBackup 7.1 or higher. For information about configuring NetBackup for Automatic Image Replication, see the *DXi-Series Symantec NetBackup OST Configuration Guide* (6-67079).

Note: You must configure at least one remote user before you can enable Automatic Image Replication (see <u>Manage</u> <u>Remote Users</u> on page 172).

If Automatic Image Replication is enabled, specify the following information:

• **Remote Storage Server Name** - The name of the remote storage server (on the target DXi) to replicate data to. The source DXi and target DXi must reside in different NetBackup domains.

Note: To configure the target DXi, see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145.

- **Remote LSU Name** The name of the LSU in the remote storage server that will receive the replicated data.
- Remote User The OST user credentials to use for authentication on the remote (target) DXi. The selected remote user *must* match a local user on the Configuration > OST > Manage Users page on the target DXi (see <u>Manage Users</u> on page 169).
- 6 Click Apply.

Editing a Storage Server

Edit a storage server to change the description of the storage server or the maximum number of allowed connections.

To edit a storage server:

1 Select the storage server and click **Edit**.

The Edit Storage Server page displays (see Figure 81).

rage Server	Quantum	I. DX: V1000 Normal Thu Dec 13 2012 - 7:49.09 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator H	elp
		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
	Home	Storage Servers LSU Manage Users Manage Remote Users Target IP Mapping Accent OST Client Plug-In	
	Replication	Edit Storage Server Help	
	Status Alerts Configuration Utilities	Name OST1 Description	
	Wizards Map	* Required Field Apply Reset Cancel	
	DXI Advanced Reporting		

2 Enter information about the storage server:

Note: If you are editing a storage server, the **Name** option cannot be changed.

- **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the storage server.
- Max Connections Enter the maximum number of connections allowed to the storage server (3 to 65536).

The maximum number of connections cannot be changed if the storage server has more than zero currently active connections. The number of active connections is displayed on the **OST** page (see <u>Storage Server List</u> on page 156).

Figure 81 Edit Storage Server Page **Note:** Quantum recommends setting **Max Connections** to 300.

• Enable Concurrent Optimized Duplication - Select the check box to enable optimized duplication during OST ingest.

Concurrent Optimized Duplication is disabled by default. If enabled, as data is written to the storage server, it is simultaneously replicated to the target DXi. When optimized duplication or Automatic Image Replication subsequently occurs, the operation is more efficient because a portion of the required data has already been replicated to the target storage server.

Note: To configure the target DXi, see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145.

Note: When Concurrent Optimized Duplication is enabled, all data on the storage server is duplicated, not just the specified images.

3 Click Apply.

Deleting a Storage Server

Delete a storage server if it is no longer needed. When you delete a storage server, all data stored on the storage server is lost.

Note: If you deleted the storage server from Symantec NetBackup or Symantec Backup Exec, you must wait several minutes before deleting the storage server from the DXi V-Series.

To delete a storage server:

1 Select the storage server in the **Storage Server List**.

You cannot delete a storage server if it has more than zero currently active connections. The number of active connections is displayed on the **OST** page (see <u>Storage Server List</u> on page 156). Also, you cannot delete a storage server if it contains LSUs. Before deleting the storage server, you must first delete any LSUs it contains (see <u>Deleting an LSU</u> on page 169).

Note: You can select multiple storage servers to delete at once.

2 Click Delete.

LSU

The **LSU** page allows you to manage the logical storage units (LSUs) contained on OST storage servers on the DXi V-Series. You can view information about existing LSUs, add or edit LSUs, and delete LSUs.

To access the LSU page, on the OST page, click the LSU tab (see Figure 82).

Figure 82 LSU Page

Home			System Notification				
	Storage Servers LSU	Manage Users	Manage Remote U:	sers Target IP Mapping Acce	ent OST Client Plug-In	1	
Replication	Logical Storage Unit	t List					Help
Status	Selected LSUs will be	deleted E	orce Delete LSU 0	ST Service Ready ?			
Alerts							
Configuration	LSU Name PhysicalLSU	Storage Server OST1	Physical Capacity Available capacity	Automatic Image Replication	Active Connections	Backup Images	Description
		0311	Available capacity	Disabled	0	0	
Utilities							
Wizards							
Map							
Map							
Map DXI Advanced Reporting							
DXI Advanced							
DXI Advanced	Add	Edit D	elete ?				
DXI Advanced		Edit D	elete ?				

Use the LSU page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about existing LSUs (see <u>Logical Storage Unit List</u> on page 164).
- Add a new LSU to the system (see <u>Adding an LSU</u> on page 164).
- Edit properties for an existing LSU (see Editing an LSU on page 167).
- Delete an LSU from the system (see <u>Deleting an LSU</u> on page 169).

Logical Storage Unit List

The **Logical Storage Unit List** displays the following information for all LSUs on the DXi V-Series:

- OST Service The status of the OST service. OST settings can be configured in Ready, Stopped, or Verifying state. The OST server is available for backup only in Ready state.
- LSU Name The name of the LSU.
- Storage Server The storage server that contains the LSU.
- Physical Capacity The physical storage capacity of the LSU.
- Automatic Image Replication That status of Automatic Image Replication (AIR) for the LSU (Enabled or Disabled).

Note: To view details about the remote LSU if AIR is enabled, use the **Edit Logical Storage Unit** page (see <u>Editing an LSU</u> on page 167).

- Active Connections The number of currently active connections to the LSU.
- Backup Images The number of backup images on the LSU.
- Description A brief description of the LSU (if available).

Note: Click a column heading to sort the rows in the table by that column. Click the column heading again to reverse the sort order.

Adding an LSU

Add an LSU to a storage server to present the storage capacity of the DXi V-Series as an LSU that is compatible with backup applications that support OST. You can add an LSU with a specific capacity, or you can add an LSU that uses the available capacity of the DXi V-Series.

Note: You must create a storage server before you can add an LSU (see <u>Adding a Storage Server</u> on page 157).

To add an LSU to a storage server:

1 Click Add.

The Add Logical Storage Unit page displays (see Figure 83).

Figure 83 Add Logical Storage	Quantum.	h. DX; V1000 Normal Fri Dec 14 2012 - 3:13:49 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Help
Unit Page		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home	Storage Servers LSU Manage Users Manage Remote Users Target IP Mapping Accent OST Client Plug-In
	Replication	Add Logical Storage Unit Help
	Status	
	Alerts	Storage Server 🔹 🤊
	Cartanatian	Available Capacity
	Configuration	© Specific Capacity
	Utilities	* LSU Name
	Wizards	* Physical Capacity (1 to 1048576 GB)
	Мар	Description
		Enable Automatic Image Replication 2
	DXI Advanced	* Remote Storage Server Name
	Reporting	* Remote LSU NamePhysicalLSU
		Remote User 2
		* Required Field
		Apply Reset Cancel

- 2 Enter information about the LSU.
 - Storage Server Select the storage server that will contain the new LSU.
 - Available Capacity (Recommended for best performance) Select this option to add an LSU that uses the available capacity on the system.

You cannot add an available capacity LSU to a storage server that already contains an LSU. Also, if you add an available capacity LSU to a storage server, you cannot add additional LSUs to that same storage server.

- Note: After you add an LSU that uses the Available Capacity option, you cannot change the LSU to use the Specific Capacity option. Instead, you must delete the LSU, then add a new LSU and choose the Specific Capacity option (see <u>Deleting an LSU</u> on page 169).
- **Specific Capacity** Select this option to specify the physical capacity of the LSU, and then enter the following information.
 - LSU Name Enter the name of the LSU.

• **Physical Capacity** - Enter the physical capacity of the LSU (1 to 1048576 GB).

Note: Quantum recommends setting LSUs to maximum size (1048576 GB) because spanning them on a backup is not possible.

- **3** (Optional) In the **Description** box, enter a brief description of the LSU.
- 4 (Optional) Select the **Enable Automatic Image Replication** check box to automatically replicate (duplicate) data on the LSU to a remote LSU on another DXi.

Automatic Image Replication (AIR) is disabled by default. If enabled, data on an LSU is automatically replicated to a remote LSU that resides on a DXi in a different NetBackup domain. The timing of the duplication, as well as the backup images that are duplicated, are determined by the storage lifecycle policies (SLPs) configured in NetBackup.

OST AIR requires NetBackup 7.1 or higher. For information about configuring NetBackup for Automatic Image Replication, see the *DXi-Series Symantec NetBackup OST Configuration Guide* (6-67079).

Note: You must configure at least one remote user before you can enable Automatic Image Replication (see <u>Manage</u> <u>Remote Users</u> on page 172).

If Automatic Image Replication is enabled, specify the following information:

• **Remote Storage Server Name** - The name of the remote storage server (on the target DXi) to replicate data to. The source DXi and target DXi must reside in different NetBackup domains.

Note: To configure the target DXi, see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145.

- **Remote LSU Name** The name of the LSU in the remote storage server that will receive the replicated data.
- **Remote User** The OST user credentials to use for authentication on the remote (target) DXi. The selected remote

user *must* match a local user on the **Configuration > OST > Manage Users** page on the target DXi (see <u>Manage Users</u> on page 169).

5 Click Apply.

Editing an LSU

Edit an LSU to change the description of the storage server or the maximum number of allowed connections.

To edit an LSU:

1 Select the LSU and click Edit.

The Edit Logical Storage Unit page displays (see Figure 84).

Figure 84 Edit Logical Storage	Quantum	. DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Fri Dec 14 2012 - 3:14:51 AM PST Admin	Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Help
Unit Page		NAS Replication OST S	Scheduler System Notifications Contacts		
	Home	Storage Servers LSU Ma	inage Users Manage Remote Users Target IP Mapping	Accent OST Client Plug-In	
	Replication	Edit Logical Storage Unit			Help
	Status	Name	_PhysicalLSU		
	Alerts	Storage Server Name	OST1		
	Configuration	* Physical Capacity ?	0	(1 to 1048576 GB)	
	Utilities	Description			
	Wizards	Enable Automatic Image	e Replication ?		
	Мар	* Remote Storage Server	r Name		
		* Remote LSU Name	PhysicalLSU		
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Remote User		- 2	
		* Required Field			
		Apply Reset	Cancel		
	L				

2 Enter information about the LSU:

Note: If you are editing an LSU, the **Name** option cannot be changed.

• **Physical Capacity** - (Specific capacity LSUs only) Enter the physical capacity of the LSU (1 to 1048576 GB).

The physical capacity cannot be changed if the LSU has more than zero currently active connections. The number of active connections is displayed on the **LSU** page (see <u>Logical Storage</u> <u>Unit List</u> on page 164).

- Description (Optional) Enter a brief description of the LSU.
- **3** (Optional) Select the **Enable Automatic Image Replication** check box to automatically replicate (duplicate) data on the LSU to a remote LSU on another DXi.

Automatic Image Replication (AIR) is disabled by default. If enabled, data on an LSU is automatically replicated to a remote LSU that resides on a DXi in a different NetBackup domain. The timing of the duplication, as well as the backup images that are duplicated, are determined by the storage lifecycle policies (SLPs) configured in NetBackup.

OST AIR requires NetBackup 7.1 or higher. For information about configuring NetBackup for Automatic Image Replication, see the *DXi-Series Symantec NetBackup OST Configuration Guide* (6-67079).

Note: You must configure at least one remote user before you can enable Automatic Image Replication (see <u>Manage</u> <u>Remote Users</u> on page 172).

If Automatic Image Replication is enabled, specify the following information:

• **Remote Storage Server Name** - The name of the remote storage server (on the target DXi) to replicate data to. The source DXi and target DXi must reside in different NetBackup domains.

Note: To configure the target DXi, see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145.

- **Remote LSU Name** The name of the LSU in the remote storage server that will receive the replicated data.
- Remote User The OST user credentials to use for authentication on the remote (target) DXi. The selected remote user *must* match a local user on the Configuration > OST > Manage Users page on the target DXi (see <u>Manage Users</u> on page 169).
- 4 Click Apply.

Deleting an LSU

Delete an LSU if it is no longer needed. When you delete an LSU, all data stored on the LSU is lost.

Note: If you deleted the LSU from Symantec NetBackup or Symantec Backup Exec, you must wait several minutes before deleting the LSU from the DXi V-Series.

To delete an LSU:

1 Select the LSU in the Logical Storage Unit List.

You cannot delete an LSU if it has more than zero currently active connections. The number of active connections is displayed on the **LSU** page (see <u>Logical Storage Unit List</u> on page 164).

Note: You can select multiple LSUs to delete at once.

2 (Optional) Select the Force Delete LSU check box to delete LSUs that are not empty.

Normally, you cannot delete an LSU if it contains existing backup images. If for some reason you cannot remove files from the LSU, selecting the **Force Delete LSU** check box allows you to delete the LSU even though it is not empty.

3 Click Delete.

Manage Users

The **Manage Users** page allows you to create and manage local authenticated users for use with OST. After you create the OST user credentials, enter them in the backup application to authenticate OST devices on the media server. When using OST Automatic Image Replication (AIR), the remote user credentials specified on the source DXi must match the local user credentials on the target (remote) DXi.

To access the **Manage Users** page, on the **OST** page, click the **Manage Users** tab (see <u>Figure 85</u>).

Figure 85

Manage Users Page	Quantum	I. DX; V1000 Normal Fri Dec 14 2012 - 3:15:52 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator Help
5 5	Quantum	·
		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home	Storage Servers LSU Manage Users Manage Remote Users Target IP Mapping Accent OST Client Plug-In
	Replication	Manage Local Users Help
	Status	Add Edit Delete
	Alerts	Name Description
	Configuration	User1
	Utilities	
	Wizards	
	Мар	
	DXI Advanced Reporting	
	_	

Use the Manage Users page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about local authenticated users (see <u>Manage</u> <u>Local Users List</u> on page 170).
- Add a local authenticated user (see <u>Adding an Authenticated User</u> on page 170).
- Edit a local authenticated user (see <u>Editing an Authenticated User</u> on page 171).
- Delete a local authenticated user (see <u>Deleting an Authenticated</u> <u>User</u> on page 172).

Manage Local Users List

The **Manage Local Users** list displays the following information for all local authenticated users:

- Name The name of the local authenticated user.
- Description A brief description of the local authenticated user (if available).

Adding an Authenticated User

Add an authenticated user to create local OST user credentials. The OST user credentials are required to authenticate OST devices on a media server, or to enable the DXi to receive duplicated data using OST AIR.

To add an authenticated user:

1 Click Add.

The Add User Credential window displays (see Figure 86).

Figure 86 Add User Credential	Add User Credential
	* User name
	* New Password
	* Confirm New Password
	Description
	* Required field
	Apply Cancel

- 2 Enter information about the authenticated user:
 - User name Enter the name of the authenticated user.
 - New Password Enter the password for the authenticated user.
 - Confirm New Password Enter the password again to confirm it.
 - **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the authenticated user.
- 3 Click Apply.

Editing an Authenticated User

Edit an authenticated user to change the user's password or description.

To edit an authenticated user:

1 Select the user and click Edit.

The Edit User Credentials window displays (see Figure 87).

Edit User Credentials				
* User name	User1			
* New Password				
* Confirm New Password				
Description				
* Required field				
Apply Cancel				

2 Enter information about the authenticated user:

Note: If you are editing an authenticated user, you cannot change the **User name**.

- New Password Enter the password for the authenticated user.
- Confirm New Password Enter the password again to confirm it.
- **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the authenticated user.
- 3 Click Apply.

Deleting an Authenticated User

Delete an authenticated user if the OST user credentials are no longer needed to authenticate OST devices on a media server.

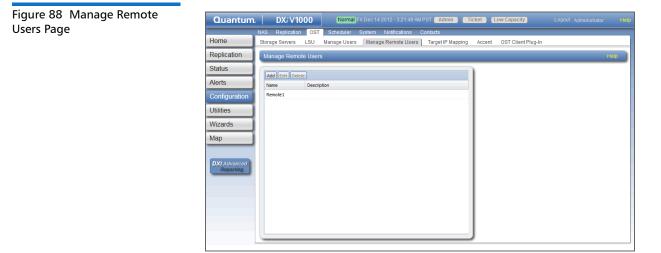
To delete an authenticated user, select the user and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple users to delete at once.

Manage Remote Users

The **Manage Remote Users** page allows you to create and manage remote users for use with OST Automatic Image Replication (AIR). You must configure at least one remote user before you can enable Automatic Image Replication for an LSU (see <u>Adding an LSU</u> on page 164). When using OST Automatic Image Replication (AIR), the remote user credentials specified on the source DXi must match the local user credentials on the target (remote) DXi.

To access the Manage Remote Users page, on the OST page, click the Manage Remote Users tab (see Figure 88).



Use the Manage Users page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about remote users (see <u>Manage Remote Users</u> <u>List</u> on page 173).
- Add a remote user (see <u>Adding a Remote User</u> on page 174).
- Edit a remote user (see Editing a Remote User on page 174).
- Delete a remote user (see <u>Deleting a Remote User</u> on page 175).

Manage Remote Users List

The **Manage Remote Users** list displays the following information for all remote users:

- Name The name of the remote user.
- Description A brief description of the remote user (if available).

Adding a Remote User

Add a remote user to create OST user credentials for use with OST AIR. When you enable Automatic Image Replication for an LSU, you specify a remote user. The remote user credentials on the source DXi must match the local user credentials on the target (remote) DXi.

To add a remote user:

1 Click Add.

The Add Remote AIR Credential window displays (see Figure 89).

Figure 89 Add Remote AIR Credential	Add Remote AIR Credential
	* User name
	* New Password
	* Confirm New Password
	Description
	* Required field
	Apply Cancel

- 2 Enter information about the remote user:
 - User name Enter the name of the remote user.
 - New Password Enter the password for the remote user.
 - **Confirm New Password** Enter the password again to confirm it.
 - **Description** (Optional) Enter a brief description of the remote user.
- 3 Click Apply.

Editing a Remote User

Edit a remote user to change the user's password or description.

To edit a remote user:

1 Select the user and click Edit.

The Edit Remote Credentials window displays (see Figure 90).

Figure 90 Edit Remote Credentials	Edit Remote Credentials	×
	* User name Remote1	
	* New Password	
	* Confirm New Password	
	Description	
	* Required field	
	Apply Cancel	

2 Enter information about the remote user:

Note: If you are editing a remote user, you cannot change the User name.

- New Password Enter the password for the remote user.
- Confirm New Password Enter the password again to confirm it.
- Description (Optional) Enter a brief description of the remote user.
- 3 Click Apply.

Deleting a Remote User

Delete a remote user if the OST user credentials are no longer needed to authenticate an LSU for Automatic Image Replication.

To delete a remote user, select the user and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple users to delete at once.

Target IP Mapping

The Target IP Mapping page allows you to map a target data IP address to route all network traffic sent to the data IP address to the specified replication IP address instead. This can be necessary if the target DXi is

configured with different network interfaces (and therefore different IP addresses) for data and replication traffic (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

Generally, OST traffic is routed to the data network segment. However, the OST Automatic Image Replication (AIR) and Concurrent Optimized Duplication features use the replication network segment to transmit data to the target system. (Optimized duplication can optionally use the replication channel.) When a data IP address is mapped to a replication IP address, OST traffic that is sent to one of the IP addresses is routed to the other IP address as necessary.

Note: You must add target IP mapping information if you are performing optimized duplication on a segmented network and replication is not configured between the source DXi and target DXi.

Note: Quantum does not recommend mapping multiple data IP addresses to a single replication IP address. If you have mapped multiple data IP addresses and the routing is not working, try removing the additional data IP addresses, and map only a single data IP address.

To access the **Target IP Mapping** page, on the **OST** page, click the **Target IP Mapping** tab (see <u>Figure 91</u>).

Figure 91 Target IP Mapping	Quantum.	DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Fri Dec 14 2012 - 4:01:06 AM	PST Admin Ticket (ow Capacity	Logout Administrator	Help
Page		NAS Replication OST	Scheduler System Notifications C	Contacts			
	Home	Storage Servers LSU	Manage Users Manage Remote Users	Target IP Mapping Accent	OST Client Plug-In		
	Replication	Target IP Mapping 🛛				F	lelp
	Status						_
	Alerts	Add Edit Delete Target Data IP	Target Replication IP 🔺				
	Configuration	□ Target Replication IP :	10.0.0.2 (1 Item)				
	Utilities	10.0.0.1	10.0.0.2				
	Wizards						
	Мар						
	DXi Advanced Reporting						
	reporting						

Use the Target IP Mapping page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about mapped data and replication IP addresses (see <u>Target IP Mapping List</u> on page 177).
- Map a target data IP address to a replication IP address (see <u>Mapping a Target IP Address</u> on page 177).
- Edit the mapping for a target data IP address (see <u>Editing a Mapped</u> <u>IP Address</u> on page 178).
- Delete the mapping for a target data IP address (see <u>Deleting a</u> <u>Mapped IP Address</u> on page 178).

Target IP Mapping List

The **Target IP Mapping** list displays the following information for all mapped IP addresses:

- Target Data IP The mapped target data IP address.
- Target Replication IP The replication IP address to which the data IP address is mapped.

Items in the list are grouped by target replication IP address.

Mapping a Target IP Address

Add mapping for a target data IP address to route all network traffic sent to the address to the specified replication IP address instead.

To map a target IP address:

1 Click Add.

The Add Target Data IP Mapping window displays (see Figure 92).



2 Enter information about the mapping:

- Target Data IP The target data IP address to map.
- Target Replication IP The replication IP address to map the data IP address to.
- 3 Click Apply.

Editing a Mapped IP Address

Edit a mapped IP address to route traffic sent to the target data IP address to a different replication IP address.

To edit a mapped IP address:

1 Select the mapped IP address and click Edit.

The Edit Target Data IP Mapping window displays (see Figure 93).

Figure 93 Edit Target Data IP Mapping	Edit Target Data IP Mappin	J 🛛
	* Target Data IP	10.0.0.1
	* Target Replication IP	10.0.0.2
	* Required field	
	Apply Cancel	

2 In the Target Replication IP box, enter the replication IP address to map the data IP address to.

Note: If you are editing a mapped IP address, you cannot change the target data IP address.

3 Click Apply.

Deleting a Mapped IP Address

Delete a mapped IP address if traffic sent to the target data IP address no longer needs to be routed to a replication IP address

To delete a mapped IP address, select the IP address and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple mapped IP addresses to delete at once.

DXi Accent

Use the **Accent** page to enable or disable DXi Accent. Quantum's DXi Accent software accelerates backups and reduces network bandwidth requirements by distributing deduplication between the backup server and the DXi. OST data sent from the media server to the DXi can be encrypted using AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) encryption methods.

To access the **Accent** page, on the **OST** page, click the **Accent** tab (see <u>Figure 85</u>).

Figure 94 Accent Page	Quantum.	D	XiV1000	Norma	I) Fri Dec 14 2012 - 4:03:38 AM	PST Admin	Ticket Lov	w Capacity	Logout Administrator	Help
		NAS Re	plication OST	Scheduler	System Notifications C	Contacts				
	Home	Storage S		Manage Use		Target IP Mappir	ng Accent	OST Client Plug-In		
	Replication	Accent							1	lelp
	Status									
	Alerts	Enable Inline Dedupe with Accent								
	Configuration	E	Encryption TLS with AES 256							
	Utilities		Certificate	File	Factory Installed: 2012-12-03	15:46:51	Browse			
	Wizards		Private Ke	y File	Factory Installed: 2012-12-03	15:46:51	Browse			
	Мар			Authority File	Factory Installed: 2012-12-03		Browse			
			Rejection I	List File	Not Installed		Browse			
	DXI Advanced Reporting		Install	Restore Factor	y Defaults					
		A	oply Res	et						
		_								

To configure DXi Accent:

1 To enable DXi Accent, select the **Enable Inline Dedupe with Accent** check box.

Or to disable DXi Accent, clear the **Enable Inline Dedupe with Accent** check box.

- 2 To enable or disable encryption when sending OST data from the media server to the DXi, select an option in the **Encryption** drop-down box:
 - None OST data is not encrypted.
 - **Default AES 128** OST data is encrypted using AES 128-bit encryption.
 - **Default AES 256** OST data is encrypted using AES 256-bit encryption.

• TLS with AES 256 - OST data is encrypted using AES 256-bit encryption with Transport Layer Security (TLS).

Note: Using 256-bit encryption provides a stronger level of security but may have an impact on system performance in some situations.

- **3** If you selected the **TLS with AES 256** encryption option, you must install the required certificate and key files on the DXi:
 - Certificate File
 - Private Key File
 - Certificate Authority File
 - Rejection List File

To install a file, click the **Browse** button to browse the system and locate the file, and then click **Open**. Click **Install** to install the selected file on the DXi.

Caution: Installing certificate files requires a system reboot immediately after the changes are applied. Wait for at least 15 minutes before logging back in.

Note: You can install new certificate and key files at any time, as long as there are no active network connections between the OST media server and the DXi.

Note: To remove all certificate and key files, click **Restore Factory** Defaults.

4 Click Apply.

Note: To use DXi Accent, you must install the Quantum OST Client Plug-in on the media server. For information about installing the OST Plug-in and using DXi Accent, see the *Symantec NetBackup OST Configuration Guide* (6-67079).

OST	Client	Plug-In

Use the **OST Client Plug-In** page to download the Quantum OST Plugin.

OST (OpenStorage) technology allows Symantec NetBackup and Backup Exec to seamlessly integrate with the DXi V-Series. Using OST, NetBackup and Backup Exec can manage backups through the DXi V-Series and can take advantage of the system's capabilities, such as data deduplication and replication. To use OST, you must first download the OST Plug-in and install it on the NetBackup or Backup Exec media server.

To download the OST Plug-in, click **Client Plug-in Download**. On the download page, download the correct OST Plug-in for your backup application and operating system. Also on the download page, click **Installation Instructions**, to download the *OST Plug-in Installation Instructions*. Follow the included instructions to install the OST Plug-in on your media server.

Note: For information about configuring and using OST with the DXi V-Series, see the *Symantec NetBackup OST Configuration Guide* (6-67079) and the *Symantec Backup Exec OST Configuration Guide* (6-67080).

Scheduler

The **Scheduler** page allows you to manage scheduled events on the DXi V-Series, including replication and replication throttling, e-mail reports, healthchecks, and space reclamation. With schedules, you specify when certain events should occur, and the system automatically performs those events at the specified time. Events can be one-time only, or they can reoccur at defined intervals.

To access the **Scheduler** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **Scheduler** tab.

The Scheduler page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Scheduler Calendar</u>
- <u>Scheduler NAS</u>

Scheduler Calendar

The **Scheduler Calendar** page presents all currently scheduled events on the DXi V-Series in a calendar view. You can view events for a particular day, week, or month. You can also add, modify, and delete scheduled events.

To access the **Scheduler Calendar** page, on the **Scheduler** page, click the **Calendar** tab (see <u>Figure 95</u>).



Use the Scheduler Calendar page to perform the following tasks:

- View currently scheduled events (see <u>Viewing Scheduled Events</u> on page 183).
- Add a new scheduled event or edit an existing event (see <u>Adding or</u> <u>Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- Configure NAS shares for scheduled replication (see <u>Scheduling a</u> <u>Share for Replication</u> on page 186).
- Configure replication throttle events (see <u>Scheduling Replication</u> <u>Throttling</u> on page 187).
- Configure the DXi V-Series to send status and configuration reports (see <u>Scheduling E-mail Reports</u> on page 189).
- Configure the DXi V-Series to run healthchecks (see <u>Scheduling</u> <u>Healthchecks</u> on page 189).

- Configure the DXi V-Series to run space reclamation (see <u>Scheduling</u> <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 190).
- Specify when and how often an event reoccurs (see <u>Setting</u> <u>Recurrence for a Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).
- Remove an event occurrence or event series from the schedule (see <u>Deleting a Scheduled Event</u> on page 191).

Viewing Scheduled Events

The **Scheduler Calendar** page displays all replication, replication throttle, e-mail report, healthchecks, and space reclamation events scheduled to occur in a selected time period.

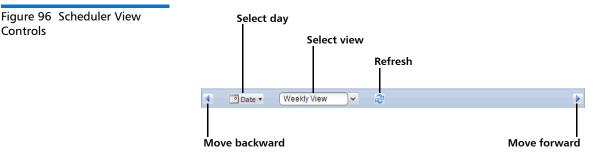
Use the following controls to adjust the schedule view (see Figure 95):

- To change the number of days displayed at a time, select **Daily View**, **Weekly View**, or **Monthly View** in the drop-down box at the top of the schedule view.
- To move the view backward or forward in time, click the arrows at the upper left and upper right of the schedule view.
- To view the schedule for a specific day, select it in the **Date** pop-up calendar.
- To update the schedule view with the latest data, click the **Refresh** icon.

Note: The thickness of the bars on the schedule view varies based on the type of event and the selected time frame. Healthcheck events have a span of 6 hours. Space Reclamation events have a span of 16 hours. All other open-ended events have a default span of 2 hours.

Note: If you see an error indicating there is not enough memory to complete the request, try using daily or weekly view, and use the arrows to move forward or backward in time.

Controls



Adding or Editing a Scheduled Event

To add or edit a scheduled event:

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, adjust the schedule view to display the time period when the event will occur (see Viewing Scheduled Events on page 183). Then do one of the following actions (see Figure 97):
 - To add a new event, click and drag on the schedule in the row for the type of event to add. A new event is added where you dragged the cursor.

Note: The new event must begin after the current time, which is indicated by the dotted vertical line.

• To edit an existing event, double-click the event. If the event is recurring, select **Open this occurrence** to edit only the one instance of the event, or select **Open the series** to edit the entire recurring series, and then click OK.

Note: You cannot edit an event that occurred in the past.

Note: You can also right-click an existing event to see options for adding a new event or editing an event.

Figure 97 Adding a New Event

	Quantum.	DX <i>i</i> V1000	N	ormal)Fri Dec 14 3	2012 - 4:29:19 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Ca	apacity Logout Ad	
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Home Calendar NAS Replication Scheduler Home Scheduler Scheduler Home Home Home						
	Status Alerts	▲ Date •	Weekly View				•
	Configuration	Event Type	Mon 12/13	* Start	2012-12-17 1:00 AM	Sun 12/23	
Click and drag to add a new ——	Ounties	NAS Replication	-	Description * Share	New event Select a share by clicking on "Select" button	Select	
event	Wizards Map	Email Reports		Repeats	Does not repeat		
	map	Healthchecks	20	* Required		20*	
Double-click to edit an existing	Reporting	Space Reclamation	20	Apply	Cancel	12-201	2
event							

- **2** Define the start and, if applicable, the end of the event.
 - Specify the **Start Date** and **Start Time** using the pop-up calendar and drop-down box.
 - (Replication throttle events only) Specify the End Date and End Time. The end date and time must occur after the start date and time.

Note: For a new event, you can click and drag to adjust the start and end time. For an existing event, you can drag the event to change when it occurs. You can also drag the left or right edge of the event to adjust the start or end time.

- **3** Enter a brief description of the event in the **Description** box. (This description will display on the schedule view.)
- **4** Specify options specific to the type of event. See the following sections:
 - Scheduling a Share for Replication on page 186
 - <u>Scheduling Replication Throttling</u> on page 187
 - <u>Scheduling E-mail Reports</u> on page 189
 - Scheduling Healthchecks on page 189
 - <u>Scheduling Space Reclamation</u> on page 190

- 5 (Required for healthchecks and space reclamation) Specify when and how often the event reoccurs (see <u>Setting Recurrence for a</u> <u>Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).
- 6 Click Apply.
- **7** Refresh the browser window to make sure the event settings are applied.

Caution: When adding multiple events of the same type, make sure the events do not overlap. If two events of the same type overlap, the later event takes precedence over the earlier event.

Scheduling a Share for Replication

Configure a replication schedule for a NAS share to automatically replicate the share data to the target system at regular intervals. Disable scheduled replication if you do not want to automatically replicate the share data to the target.

Note: For more information about configuring the DXi V-Series for replication, see <u>DXi V-Series Replication</u> on page 69.

Note: Disabling replication for a share does not delete any scheduled replication events for that share. If you no longer want to schedule the share for replication, manually delete the schedule (see <u>Deleting a Scheduled Event</u> on page 191).

To configure a replication schedule for a share:

- On the Scheduler Calendar page, add or edit an event in the NAS Replication row (see <u>Adding or Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- 2 Click Select.
- 3 In the pop-up window, select the share to schedule for replication.

Only shares that are enabled for deduplication appear in the pop-up window. To filter the list, type the first few letters of the share name in the **Search** box.

Note: Scheduling a share that has replication disabled will automatically enable replication.

- 4 Click OK.
- 5 (Optional) Specify when and how often the event reoccurs (see <u>Setting Recurrence for a Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).
- 6 Click Apply.

Scheduling Replication Throttling

During replication throttling, the DXi V-Series limits the amount of source replication data it sends to not exceed a specified maximum bandwidth. Schedule replication throttling to control the amount of network bandwidth used by source replication at certain times. For example, you might configure replication throttling to occur during planned backup times to avoid network contention.

Note: For more information about configuring the DXi V-Series for replication, see <u>DXi V-Series Replication</u> on page 69.

To schedule replication throttling:

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, add or edit an event in the **Replication Throttle** row (see <u>Adding or Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- 2 Specify the maximum allowed bandwidth by entering a value in the **Bandwidth** box and selecting the units in the drop-down box (**KB**/s or **MB**/s). The lowest value you can set is 32 KB/s. The highest value you can set is 125 MB/s.

Note: Values of 1000 KB/s and higher are rounded down to the nearest whole MB/s value when the event is saved.

Note: Do not enter a decimal value in the **Bandwidth** box. Instead, use whole values. For example, enter 2500 KB/s rather than 2.5 MB/s.

During the replication throttle event, the DXi will limit the amount of data it sends during source replication so that it does not exceed the specified bandwidth. After the replication throttle event ends, the DXi will no longer throttle the sending of source replication data (until the next replication throttle event occurs).

Caution: Do not set the maximum allowed bandwidth to a value that is lower than necessary. If the maximum allowed bandwidth is set to the lowest value, large replication jobs may fail.

- Note: To set a constant replication throttle, use the Configuration > Replication > Send page (see <u>Replication Send</u> on page 145). Do *not* configure a throttle schedule if a constant throttle is enabled. The scheduled replication throttling bandwidth settings take precedence over the constant throttle value. (The currently active replication throttle rate appears on the Home page under Current Activity.)
- **3** (Optional) Specify when and how often the event reoccurs (see <u>Setting Recurrence for a Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).
- 4 Click Apply.

About Replication Throttling Statistics

Keep in mind the following information when observing actual network bandwidth usage during a replication throttle event:

- During a replication throttle event, only outgoing replication data traffic is throttled, not other outgoing traffic. Because of this, you may observe network usage to be higher than the specified maximum bandwidth. Differences in the sampling time period may also cause discrepancies between the specified maximum bandwidth and observed traffic.
- If the DXi is configured to use a bonded network interface for replication traffic, load balancing is determined independently by the bonding mode selected for the interface (see <u>Network</u> on page 193). Because of this, you may need to sum the values for all slave devices in the bonded interface to calculate the overall outgoing traffic rate.
- The replication throttle bandwidth maximum is specified in KB/s or MB/s, so depending on the statistic or report you are observing, you

may need to convert the bandwidth maximum to Kb/s or Mb/s in order to correctly compare it to the observed values.

Scheduling E-mail Reports

The DXi V-Series can automatically generate a report with system status data or with configuration data and send it to all configured e-mail recipients.

Note: For more information about e-mail reports and configuring e-mail recipients, see <u>Email Reports</u> on page 229.

To configure a schedule for e-mail reports:

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, add or edit an event in the Email Reports row (see <u>Adding or Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- 2 In the **Report Type** drop-down box, select the type of e-mail report to schedule (**Status** or **Configuration**).
- **3** (Optional) Specify when and how often the event reoccurs (see <u>Setting Recurrence for a Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).
- 4 Click Apply.

Scheduling Healthchecks

During healthchecks, the DXi V-Series performs tests to verify the health and integrity of the data deduplication blockpool. Schedule healthchecks regularly to make sure the system is healthy and operating correctly. When you schedule healthchecks, only the healthchecks that are currently enabled are run.

Note: For more information about enabling healthchecks, see <u>Healthchecks</u> on page 249.

To configure a schedule for healthchecks:

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, add or edit an event in the Healthchecks row (see <u>Adding or Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- 2 Specify when and how often the event reoccurs (see <u>Setting</u> <u>Recurrence for a Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).

Caution: For correct system operation, healthchecks *must* be run at regular intervals (at least once a week).You can schedule healthchecks to occur daily or weekly but not monthly or yearly. Also, recurrence is required.

3 Click Apply.

Scheduling Space Reclamation

During space reclamation, the DXi V-Series deletes unneeded tags from the blockpool to free up disk space. Schedule space reclamation regularly to make sure there is enough disk space to store data.

Caution: Because space reclamation can affect system performance, avoid running space reclamation during known backup periods.

Note: For more information about space reclamation, see <u>Space</u> <u>Reclamation</u> on page 256.

To configure a schedule for space reclamation:

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, add or edit an event in the Space Reclamation row (see <u>Adding or Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- 2 Specify when and how often the event reoccurs (see <u>Setting</u> <u>Recurrence for a Scheduled Event</u> on page 190).

Caution: For correct system operation, space reclamation *must* be run at regular intervals (at least once a week).You can schedule space reclamation to occur daily or weekly but not monthly or yearly. Also, recurrence is required.

3 Click Apply.

Setting Recurrence for a Scheduled Event

To specify when and how often the event reoccurs:

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, add or edit an event (see <u>Adding</u> or <u>Editing a Scheduled Event</u> on page 184).
- 2 In the Repeats drop-down box, select Does not repeat to disable recurrence. Or to enable recurrence, select how often the event reoccurs:

Note: For healthchecks and space reclamation, recurrence is required, and **Monthly** and **Yearly** recurrence options are not available. Healthchecks and space reclamation must occur at least every seven days or once a week.

- Daily Specify the recurrence interval in days.
- Weekly Specify the recurrence interval in weeks, and select the days the event occurs on.
- **Monthly** Specify the recurrence interval in months, and specify the day the event occurs on (for example, the 1st day of each month or the third Friday of each month).
- Yearly Specify the recurrence interval in years, and specify the date and month the event occurs on (for example, the 15th day of March or the first Monday in May).
- **3** For recurring events, specify how long the recurrence continues (forever, for a certain number of occurrences, or until a specific date).

Note: For healthchecks and space reclamation, recurrence is always **forever**.

4 Click Apply.

Deleting a Scheduled Event

To delete an event occurrence or event series.

- 1 On the Scheduler Calendar page, right-click an event.
- **2** On the pop-up menu, select an option:
 - **Delete** Remove the selected event from the schedule.
 - **Delete this occurrence** Remove the selected occurrence in an event series from the schedule.

• **Delete all occurrences** - Remove the entire event series from the schedule.

The event or series is deleted from the schedule and will no longer occur.

Scheduler NAS

The **Scheduler NAS** page allows you to view a list of upcoming events for scheduled NAS replication activity on the DXi V-Series.

To access the **Scheduler NAS** page, on the **Scheduler** page, click the **NAS** tab (see <u>Figure 98</u>).

Figure 98 Scheduler NAS Page

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Fri Dec 14 2012 - 7:17:03 AM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Calendar NAS	
Replication	NAS	Help
Status	Weekly View - Share: Search	
Alerts	Share Start Date and Time Description	
Configuration	NAS1 2012-12-15 12:00 PM MST Replicate NAS1	
Utilities	NAS2 2012-12-16 7:00 AM MST Replicate NAS2 NAS3 2012-12-17 7:00 AM MST Replicate NAS3	
Wizards	10455 20121217 7:00 AM MS1 Replicate 10455	
Мар		
DXI Advanced		
Reporting		

The **Scheduler NAS** page displays the following information about NAS replication events that are scheduled to occur:

- Share The name of the NAS share.
- Start Date and Time The date and time the scheduled replication will start.
- **Description** The description of the event (if available).

To adjust the number of events displayed, do the following:

 In the drop-down box, select Daily View, Weekly View, or Monthly View to display events that will occur in the next day, week, or month. • In the **Share** box, type the name of a NAS share to display only events for that share. (The list is filtered as you type.)

Note: If you see an error indicating there is not enough memory to complete the request, try using daily or weekly view, or type a share name in the box to filter the results.

System

The **System** page allows you to configure system settings for the DXi V-Series, including network settings, system date and time, and security settings.

To access the **System** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **System** tab.

The **System** page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Network</u>
- Date & Time
- <u>Security</u>

Network

The **Network** page allows you to view and change network configuration information for the DXi V-Series. The DXi V-Series uses this information to connect to the network.

Network configuration information is entered during initial setup DXi V-Series. You should consult your network administrator before making any changes to the network settings.

Caution: Changing the network configuration requires a system reboot to allow all system services to function correctly. Changing the network configuration requires a system reboot immediately after the changes are applied.

Note: Rebooting the system can take several minutes. After the new network configuration is saved, close your Web browser and wait 15 minutes before logging in again. If you change the IP address that you use to log in to the system, you will temporarily lose your connection to the remote management console. Because of this, you might not see a confirmation page informing you that the new settings have been saved.

To access the **Network** page, on the **System** page, click the **Network** tab (see Figure 99).

Chapter 8: DXi V-Series Configuration System

Figure 99 Network Configuration

Quantum		XiV1			ri Dec 14 2012					ïcket Lo	ow Capaci	ty)		Logout	t Administrator	Help
Home	NAS Re Network	plicatio Date		cheduler 🔤	System Not	ificati	ons Cont	acts								
Replication			guration													Help
Status															9	
Alerts	General 🕐															
Configuration	*н	lostnan	ne DXI	DXI												
Utilities	Primary DNS IP Address 10.															
Wizards	D	NS Suf earch l	fix .ist ?	.com		_		Second	lary DN	S IP Address	s 10.			5		
Мар			l	: Tertiary DNS IP Address												
		Require	d Field													
DXI Advanced Reporting			Configurat	ion ?												
		Note: To	g Details ? maintain system	network con	nectivity the swit	ch cor	nnected to you	r system m	ust be							
		contigur	ed to use the sar													
		onded	۲	۲	eth2(10GbE)	eth3	0		N/A							
		bond0 bond1	0	0	0			Round Rob Round Rob								
				(Update Unde	?										
	Hide	Interfa	ce Details ?													
		DHCP	Physical Port		Mode Link Sp				Status	Jumbo Fram MTU Size	ie					
	eth0 eth1	 Image: Construction Image: Construction<	eth0 eth1	N/A			Up Up	Up		1500 - 1500 -						
	eth2		eth2	N/A			Down	No Ca	rrier	1500 👻						
	eth3		eth3	N/A			Down	No Ca	rrier	1500 👻						
	IP Ad	idress	Table			_										
	Note	: A maxi	mum of 10 IP ad	dresses per ir	nterface are allow	red.					Traffic	Tuno	Allow	od 2		
		Interfa	ce VLAN TAG	D * IP	Address		* Netmas	k	*	Gateway			Data			
	eth0			10.		25			10.	1						
	eth1		_	10.	1.0	25	5		10.			-	-	1		
		Add IF	-								_					
	eth3	Add IF			6											
					(Up	idate	Delete	Undo								
	Hide Routing Details for ?															
	De	stinatio	n Dest Netma	sk Dest Gat	eway											
		Upd	ate Delete	Undo ?												
															1	
			ort Backpar		ons			_								
	ET	HO ETH	1 ETH2	ЕТНЗ		_		Connect	red - No			L				
								ETH0 + E	ETH1 + E Ports	ETH2 + ETH3 (Not Bonded)					
	Upda	ate Port \	/iew Click to up	odate current	Ethernet port cor	mectiv	vity status.		-	_	_					
		ply) (Reset						_			_	_			

Configuring the Network

Using the **Network** page, each virtual Ethernet port in the DXi can be configured as a separate device. In addition, you can create bonded devices (logical ports) consisting of two or more virtual ports. For each port or device, you can specify the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) frame size, and you can optionally assign the port or device to a VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network).

After you define devices (single port or bonded), you can create up to ten network interfaces for each device. Each interface has its own IP address information, and you can specify the types of traffic allowed on the interface (management, replication, or data). Finally, you can add routing information for an interface to enable connectivity with devices on different subnets.

Note: You can choose to allow any traffic type (management, replication, or data) on an interface. In this case, the routing of different traffic types, as well as firewall capability, must be controlled using the network infrastructure (routers and switches) that the DXi is connected to.

Keep in mind the following information when configuring the network on the DXi V-Series:

- The DXi V-Series utilizes four VMware VMXNET3 virtual Ethernet ports, which appear on the **Network** page as eth0, eth1, eth2, and eth3.
- The link speed of eth0 and eth1 are always reported as 1GbE on the **Network** page. The link speed of eth2 and eth3 are always reported as 10GbE on the **Network** page. However, the actual link speed is determined by the physical Ethernet ports on the host ESXi server.
- By default, eth0 and eth1 are *not* bonded into a single device. Similarly, eth2 and eth3 are *not* bonded. While the **Network** page will not prevent configuring a bonded device, Quantum does not support bonding the virtual Ethernet ports on the DXi V-Series. In addition, network segmentation (routing management, replication, or data traffic on different interfaces) is not enforced when using DHCP.
- The DXi V-Series supports DHCP for automatic configuration of IP addresses. You can also manually specify IP addresses as required by your network.

• For correct operation, make sure the network switch connected to the ESXi server is properly configured. If the DXi V-Series is set to use LACP, then the network switch must be configured for (static) port trunking with a submode of LACP.

The ESXi vSwitch should be configured for **Route based on IP hash** (ESXi node > Configuration tab > Ports tab > vSwitch > Edit button > NIC Teaming parameter > Load Balancing).

Configuring the network includes the following major steps:

Note: Before configuring the network, work with your network administrator to determine the network settings that will be required to properly integrate the DXi V-Series with your company's network.

- 1 <u>Configuring General Network Settings</u> on page 197
- 2 <u>Configuring Bonding Details</u> on page 199
- 3 Configuring Interface Details on page 201
- 4 Configuring Interface IP Addresses on page 202
- 5 <u>Configuring Interface Routing</u> on page 204
- 6 Applying Network Settings on page 206

Configuring General Network Settings

Under **General**, enter the following network information as provided by your network administrator (see Figure 100):

Figure 100 Network Page: General	General ? *Hostname DXI
	Default Gateway Primary DNS IP Address 10 DNS Suffix Search List ?
	* Required Field

Note: If DHCP is enabled for the device, you cannot specify DNS information. Instead, DNS information is automatically assigned by the DHCP server.

- **Note:** When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.
- Hostname The hostname of the DXi V-Series.

The **Hostname** cannot be blank and must contain only letters [A-Z, a-z], numbers [0-9], hyphens [-], underscores $[_]$, and dots [.].

• Default Gateway - The default gateway IP address.

Specifying a default gateway is optional if all access is local to a particular subnet. For example, if the DXi V-Series and all of its clients are on the same subnet, you do not need to specify a default gateway.

Caution: Specifying a default gateway is required to enable connectivity with all subnets other than those that the DXi V-Series is directly connected to. For example, if the DXi V-Series and its clients are on different subnets, or you are using an external NTP server, you must specify a default gateway.

• **DNS Suffix Search List** - (Optional) The local domain to search first when resolving domain names.

The domain suffix is a single domain name. The domain name may contain only letters (A–Z), numbers (0–9), dots (.), and hyphens (-).

• Primary, Secondary, and Tertiary DNS IP Address - (Optional) The IP addresses of up to three DNS servers used to resolve domain names and translate them into IP addresses.

Note: You must specify a DNS IP address if you plan to use hostname format when configuring an NTP time server, outgoing e-mail server, replication sources and targets, and other information. Note: The DNS Suffix Search List and DNS IP Addresses cannot be modified if the DXi V-Series is currently joined to a Windows domain. To disjoin a Windows domain, see <u>Windows Domain</u> on page 135.

Configuring Bonding Details

Note: While the **Network** page will not prevent configuring a bonded device, Quantum does not support bonding the virtual Ethernet ports on the DXi V-Series. In addition, network segmentation (routing management, replication, or data traffic on different interfaces) is not enforced when using DHCP.

Under **IP Address Configuration > Bonding Details**, configure bonded devices (see Figure 101):

IP Address Configuration ? Hide Bonding Details ? Note: To maintain system network connectivity the switch connected to your system must be configured to use the same bonding mode
 eth0(1GbE)
 eth1(1GbE)
 eth2(10GbE)
 eth3(10GbE)
 * Bonding Mode ?

 Not Bonded
 Image: Comparison of the state of ۲ ۲ 0 bond0 0 0 Round Robin (Mode 0) 👻 bond1 \bigcirc Round Robin (Mode 0) -Update Undo ?

- 1 If necessary, click the Show link to show the bonding details table.
- 2 For each available bonded device (**bond0**, **bond1**, and so on), select two or more Ethernet ports with the same link speed to assign to the bond. Or select **Not Bonded** to leave a port unassigned to any bond.

If no ports are assigned to a bond, the bond cannot be configured. That is, settings cannot be entered for the bond in the **Interface Details** or **IP Address** tables because no Ethernet ports are assigned to the device.

All ports assigned to the same device are bonded together into a single logical port. For example, if you select **bond0** for port **eth0** and port **eth1**, both ports are bonded together in the **bond0** device. A bonded device can contain two or more ports.

Figure 101 Network Page:

Bonding Details

Note: All ports associated with a bond must have the same link speed (1GbE or 10GbE).

- **3** For each bonded device, specify the bonding mode:
 - Note: To maintain network connectivity, the switch connected to the DXi V-Series must be configured to use the same bonding mode. The best time to change the bonding mode on the switch is during the next reboot of your system, after saving the new network settings. Changing the bonding mode on the switch before saving these settings and rebooting may result in the loss of network connectivity to the system.
 - Round Robin (Mode 0) This option sends Ethernet frames using the bonded Ethernet ports with a valid MII link. Frames are sent in a round-robin fashion, starting with the first slave device and then the rest of the devices. This only applies to the traffic sent from the DXi V-Series. The Ethernet switch needs to aggregate the ports, so the connected ports are treated as a logical port. The DXi frame reception is completely dependent on the transmission algorithm of the Ethernet switch. The bonding mechanism does not balance the frame reception.
 - LACP (Mode 4) This option (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) is based on the 802.3ad IEEE standard for aggregating Ethernet ports. If the bonding algorithm is set to LACP, the Ethernet switch ports must be configured in a 802.3ad based Link Aggregation group (LAG) in LACP mode. The DXi frame reception and transmission is controlled by the LACP between the bonded ports and the Ethernet switch ports.
 - Active Backup (Mode 1) This option does not require switch configuration but may not provide the same level of load balancing and performance as other bonding modes. Only one port in the bond is active at a time. If the active port fails, another port becomes active to take its place. Because only the MAC address of the active port is visible to the Ethernet switch, the switch does not require additional configuration.
- 4 Click **Update** to save the changes you made to the **Bonding Details** table. (Clicking **Update** does not yet apply the new network settings to the DXi V-Series.)

Click **Undo** to revert to all current Bonding Details changes to the last update.

Configuring Interface Details

Under **IP Address Configuration > Interface Details**, configure DHCP and jumbo Ethernet frame settings for each port or device (see Figure 102):

Hide	lide Interface Details 🕐										
	Jumbo Frame										
	DHCP	Physical Ports	Bonding Mode	Link Speed	Link Status	Carrier Status	MTU Size				
eth0	V	eth0	N/A	1GbE	Up	Up	1500 👻				
eth1	V	eth1	N/A	1GbE	Up	Up	1500 👻				
eth2		eth2	N/A	10GbE	Down	No Carrier	1500 👻				
eth3		eth3	N/A	10GbE	Down	No Carrier	1500 👻				
	Update Undo ?										

- 1 If necessary, click the **Show** link to show the interface details table.
- 2 For each device, select the **DHCP** check box to enable Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for the device. When DHCP is enabled, IP address information is automatically assigned to the device by the DHCP server.
 - Note: If you intend to use DHCP for long-term operation, Quantum recommends registering the DXi V-Series with the DNS server. Alternately, you can use a DHCP reservation. Doing so ensures that the IP address of the DXi V-Series will not change. Otherwise, if the system is powered down and is unable to renew its DHCP lease, it could be assigned a new IP address the next time it is powered up. If a new IP address is assigned, NAS and replication services must be updated for the new IP address.
- **3** For each device, select the MTU (Maximum Transmission Unit) frame size in the **Jumbo Frame MTU Size** drop-down box.
 - **1500 MTU** The standard (STD) MTU frame size of 1,500 bytes is used.
 - 9000 MTU The jumbo MTU frame size of 9,000 bytes is used.
- 4 Click **Update** to save the changes you made to the **Interface Details** table. (Clicking **Update** does not yet apply the new network settings to the DXi V-Series.)

Figure 102 Network Page:

Interface Details

Click **Undo** to revert to all current Interface Details changes to the last update.

Configuring Interface IP Addresses

Under **IP Address Configuration > IP Address Table**, configure one or more network interfaces for each port or device (virtual Ethernet port or bonded device) (see Figure 103):

Note: If DHCP is enabled for the device, you cannot specify network information. Instead, all IP address information is automatically assigned by the DHCP server.

Figure 103 Network Page: IP Address Table		ldress Tab : A maximur		esses pe	er interface are a	llowed	J.							
										Traffic Type Allowed ?				
		Interface	VLAN TAG ID	*	IP Address		* Netmask		* Gateway	Mgm	t Repl	Data	Any	
	eth0	۲		10.			255.	1	0.)				
	eth1	0		10.	0.1		255.	1	0. 🗠 💿 🗉) -	-	-	1	
	eth2	Add IP												
	eth3	Add IP												
						Guada		2						

1 Click Add IP to add a network interface to a device.

Or select an interface to edit the IP address, netmask, gateway and traffic type. (To select an interface, click the radio button next to the interface index name, for example, **bond0:2**.)

Note: A maximum of 10 IP addresses are allowed per device. All IP addresses in the IP Address Table (added or modified) must be valid and unique, and must have a valid gateway and netmask.

2 Select the check box to enable VLAN tagging for the interface. (Or clear the check box to disable VLAN tagging for the interface.)

VLAN tagging allows you to assign an interface to a virtual local area network (VLAN). With VLAN tagging, you can route different traffic types (management, data, and replication) over different VLANs, making sure traffic types do not mix.

If VLAN tagging is enabled, enter the VLAN Tag ID for the interface. (Valid values are 2 to 4094. You can assign only one tag ID to an interface.)

- **Note:** The maximum allowed number of VLAN tag IDs is 64. If you attempt to add more than 64 VLAN tag IDs, an error displays.
- **Note:** To maintain connectivity, the switch ports connected to the DXi must be configured to accept the correct VLAN tag ID.

Caution: If VLAN tagging is enabled for an interface, DXi Advanced Reporting is unable to collect and record statistics for traffic moving over the VLAN interface (for example, eth1.400). Statistics are still collected for the base device (for example, eth1.)

- **3** Enter the following network information as provided by your network administrator (all fields are required):
 - IP Address The IP address of the interface.
 - Netmask The network mask of the interface.
 - **Gateway** The gateway of the DXi V-Series. (This is usually not the same as the default gateway.)
- 4 Select the check box for each type of network traffic allowed on the interface (segmentation):

Note: At least one interface must allow management traffic.

- **Note:** If the DXi is configured for source or target replication, you should configure at least one interface to allow replication traffic (select **Repl** or **Any**) before applying changes to network settings.
- **Note:** If you configure segmentation for non-bonded interfaces (Ethernet ports) that are on the same subnet, all traffic will use the lowest numbered Ethernet port first, no matter how segmentation is configured. To avoid this issue, create bonded interfaces, and then select the desired traffic type for each bonded interface.
 - Mgmt Select to allow management traffic.

- Repl Select to allow replication traffic.
- Data Select to allow data traffic.
- **Any** Select to allow all types of traffic (management, replication, and data).
- 5 Click Update to save the changes you made to the IP Address table. (Clicking Update does not yet apply the new network settings to the DXi V-Series.)

Click **Delete** to remove IP address information for the selected interface. Or click **Undo** to revert all current IP Address Table changes to the last update.

Note: When you add a network interface, a default route (via the default gateway) is automatically created for the interface after network settings are applied and the DXi reboots. For example, if you add an interface with IP address 10.20.185.172, a route with the destination IP address 10.20.185.0 is automatically added. If you delete the default route, it is automatically added again the next time network settings are applied and the DXi reboots. For more information about interface routing, see <u>Understanding Interface Routing</u> on page 206.

Configuring Interface Routing

Some network configurations require that you specify routing details for an interface. You need to specify routing details if the host or client the interface connects to is on a different subnet that is not reachable using the default gateway. You also need to specify routing details if you have configured multiple network segments (replication, data, or management) on the same subnet. For more information and examples, see <u>Understanding Interface Routing</u> on page 206.

Under **IP Address Configuration > Routing Details**, enter routing information for one or more interfaces (see <u>Figure 104</u>):

Note: If DHCP is enabled for the device, you cannot specify routing information. Instead, all IP address information is automatically assigned by the DHCP server.

Figure 104 Network Page: Routing Details	Hide Routing	Details for eth2:1 🕐		
Routing Details		* Destination	* Dest Netmask	Dest Gateway
	eth2:1 New).	ĺ	
		Update	Delete Undo ?	

1 In the **IP Address Table** (above routing details), select an interface to add or modify routing data. (To select an interface, click the radio button next to the interface index name, for example, **bond0:2**.)

After selecting an interface in the **IP Address Table**, the **Routing Details** table below expands to display available routes (if any).

Note: A maximum of 8 routes per interface are allowed.

- 2 If necessary, click the **Show** link to show the routing details table.
- 3 Click Add Route to add a route to the selected interface.

Or select a route to edit its settings.

- 4 Enter the following network information as provided by your network administrator:
 - **Destination** The destination network for the route.
 - **Dest Netmask** The network mask for the route.
 - **Dest Gateway** The gateway IP address used for *outgoing* traffic sent from the interface to a host or client. (This is usually not the same as the default gateway.)

Note: The destination gateway of each route *must* match the subnet of at least one configured IP address listed in the IP Address Table. If no match is found, an error displays stating that the route's destination gateway is not reachable.

Note: In the example shown in Figure 105, to reach a host on the 10.50.50.x subnet, you would enter 10.50.50.0 for destination network, 255.255.255.0 for the destination netmask, and 10.20.20.1 as the destination gateway.

5 Click **Update** to save the changes you made to the **Routing Details** table. (Clicking **Update** does not yet apply the new network settings to the DXi V-Series.)

Click **Delete** to remove IP routing information for the selected interface. Or click **Undo** to revert all current Routing Details changes to the last update.

Applying Network Settings

For network changes to take effect, you must apply the changes, finalize the confirmation, and reboot the system. To apply all changed settings on the **Network** page to the DXi V-Series, click **Apply** at the bottom of the page. Follow the prompts to confirm the changes and reboot the system.

Note: To revert all network settings to the initial state and undo all changes, click the **Reset** button.

Understanding Interface Routing

For a network on the interface to communicate with a host located on a different subnet, you must specify routing information in the **Routing Details** section. Routing is used to direct outgoing traffic from a network interface on the DXi to an IP address in another subnet by means of a destination gateway. Responses from the destination are routed back to the DXi using the gateway specified for the interface in the **IP Address Table** section.

In addition, when configuring segmented network interfaces, if the source DXi replication, data, and management interfaces are on the same subnet, you must add a host route on the source DXi to make sure the replication interface is correctly selected when replicating data to the target DXi.

See the following examples for details:

- Example 1: Segments and Target on Different Subnets
- Example 2: Segments and Target on the Same Subnet
- Example 3: Segments on the Same Subnet and Target on a Different Subnet

Example 1: Segments and Target on Different Subnets

In the example below (see <u>Figure 105</u>), the DXi has two segmented interfaces, one for management traffic and one for data traffic:

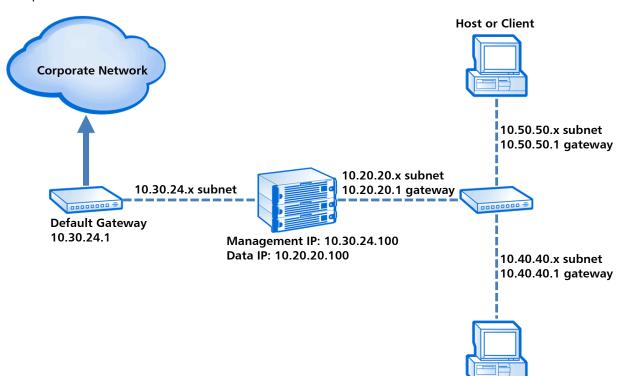
- The management interface is assigned to the 10.30.24.x subnet in the **IP Address Table** section. This subnet connects to the corporate network by mean of the default gateway (10.30.24.1).
- The data interface is assigned to the 10.20.20.x subnet in the **IP** Address Table section. This subnet connects to a gateway at 10.20.20.1.
- Using the data interface, the DXi needs to connect to a backup host that is on the 10.50.50.x subnet. Because this host is not on the same subnet as the data interface, the DXi cannot communicate with the host unless you specify routing information in the **Routing Details** section.

In this example, you would specify 10.50.50.0 for destination network, 255.255.255.0 for the destination netmask, and 10.20.20.1 as the destination gateway.

Note: The gateway specified in the **IP Address Table** section is for *incoming* traffic to the interface. The gateway specified in the **Routing Details** section is for *outgoing* traffic from the interface.

Chapter 8: DXi V-Series Configuration System

Figure 105 Interface Routing: Example 1



Host or Client

Example 2: Segments and Target on the Same Subnet

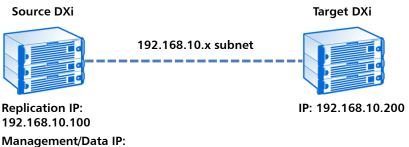
In the example below (see Figure 106), the DXi has two segmented interfaces, one for data and management traffic, and one for replication traffic:

- The source DXi management/data IP address, the source DXi replication IP address, and the target DXi IP address are all on the same subnet (192.168.10.x).
- To make sure the replication segment is used when communicating with the target DXi, you must add a host route in the **Routing Details** section on the source DXi.

In this example, you would specify the following routing details for the replication interface on the source DXi:

- **Destination** Use the IP address of the target DXi (192.168.10.200).
- Dest Netmask Use 255.255.255.255.
- **Dest Gateway** Use the replication IP address of the source DXi (192.168.10.100).

Figure 106 Interface Routing: Example 2



192.168.10.101

Example 3: Segments on the Same Subnet and Target on a Different Subnet

In the example below (see <u>Figure 107</u>), the DXi has two segmented interfaces, one for data and management traffic, and one for replication traffic:

- The source DXi management/data IP address and the source DXi replication IP address are on the same subnet (192.168.10.x). The target DXi IP address is on a different subnet (192.168.20.x)
- To make sure the replication segment is used when communicating with the target DXi, you must add a network route in the **Routing Details** section on the source DXi.

In this example, you would specify the following routing details for the replication interface on the source DXi:

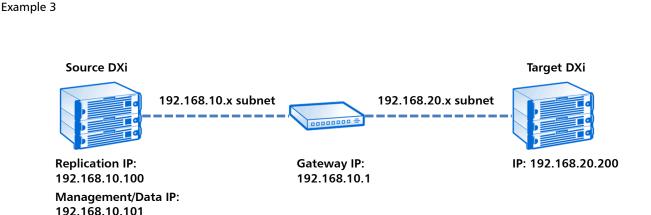
- Destination Use the subnet of the target DXi (192.168.20.0).
- Dest Netmask Use 255.255.255.0.

Figure 107 Interface Routing:

- **Dest Gateway** Use the IP address of the gateway (192.168.10.1).
- In addition, to enable communication with the target DXi by means of the gateway, you must add a second host route in the **Routing Details** section on the source DXi.

In this example, you would specify a second set of routing details for the replication interface on the source DXi:

- Destination Use the IP address of the gateway (192.168.10.1).
- Dest Netmask Use 255.255.255.255.
- **Dest Gateway** Use the replication IP address of the source DXi (192.168.10.100).



Backpanel Locations

The **Backpanel Locations** section at the bottom of the **Network** page displays a graphical representation of the virtual Ethernet ports.

The diagram indicates the current bonding configuration and connectivity status for all Ethernet ports.

- Ports that are bonded together in an interface are shaded the same color.
- A green border indicates a port is connected to a network.

- A red border indicates a port is configured but is not connected to a network.
- Click **Update Port View** to update the information on the diagram.

Date & Time

The **Date & Time** page allows you to set the system date and time of the DXi V-Series. You can specify a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server to synchronize the system time with, or you can manually enter the date and time.

Caution: The DXi V-Series uses VMware Tools time management services. Quantum recommends that you do *not* configure NTP on the DXi V-Series. Instead, you should configure NTP on the ESXi server.

Caution: Changing the date and time settings requires a system reboot immediately after the changes are applied. Wait for at least 15 minutes before logging back in.

Note: If you intend to join the DXi V-Series to a Windows network using Active Directory for NAS storage, Quantum recommends using an NTP Server to set the system date and time (see <u>Windows Domain</u> on page 135).

To access the **Date & Time** page, on the **System** page, click the **Date & Time** tab (see <u>Figure 108</u>). Figure 108 Date & Time Page

Quantum.	DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:30:23 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator He
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Network Date & Time Security	
Replication	System Date and Time Settings	Help
Status	Network Time Protocol (NTP) Server (Recommended) ? Manual Date & Time Settings	
Alerts	Current Date Tuesday, December 18, 2012	
Configuration	New System Date (Tuesday, December 18, 2012)	
Utilities	Current Time 10:38:32 AM America/Los_Angeles (PST)	
Wizards	New System Time 10 • : 38 • : 32 • AM •	
Мар	Timezone America/Los_Angeles	
	Time Format 24 Hours 12 Hours	
DXI Advanced Reporting	Apply Reset	

To set the system date and time:

- 1 Select one of the following options:
 - Network Time Protocol (NTP) Server Select this option to synchronize the DXi V-Series with an NTP timeserver or pool. Then select or specify a timeserver or pool.
 - Select a Timeserver Pool (Recommended) Select one of the well-known, geographically-based NTP timeserver pools in the drop-down box.

Note: To select a timeserver pool, you must first specify at least one DNS IP address on the **Network** page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193). Otherwise, you must specify the IP address of the timeserver pool.

• Specify a Timeserver or Pool - Type the name or IP address of the NTP server or pool. (See <u>http://support.ntp.org</u> for information about publicly available NTP servers)

To verify that the DXi V-Series can communicate with the NTP server or pool, click **Test NTP**.

 Manual Date & Time Settings - Select this option to manually set the system date and time.

Specify the **New System Date** by clicking the calendar icon. Specify the **New System Time** using the drop-down boxes.

- 2 In the **Timezone** drop-down box, select the time zone where the DXi V-Series is located.
- **3** Next to **Time Format**, select the format to use when displaying times (**24 hours** or **12 hours**).
- 4 Click Apply.

Security

The **Security** page allows you to configure security settings for the DXi V-Series, including access passwords, SSL settings, and the inactivity timeout.

To access the **Security** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **Security** tab.

The **Security** page contains the following tabs:

- Web & CLI Passwords
- <u>SSL</u>
- Login Session
- <u>Security Notice</u>

Web & CLI Passwords

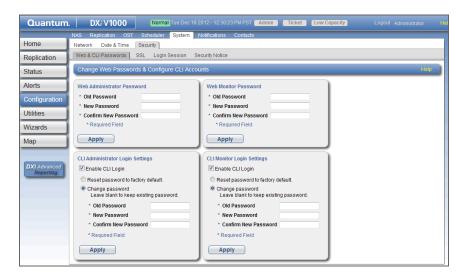
The **Web & CLI Passwords** page allows you to change the account passwords for the remote management console (Web) and the command line interface (CLI). You can also enable or disable the CLI account.

The DXi V-Series has two access levels for logging onto the remote management console or the CLI:

- Monitor Allowed to view information on the DXi V-Series remote management console or the CLI but cannot make changes.
- Administrator Allowed to view and change information on the DXi V-Series remote management console or the CLI.

To access the **Web & CLI Passwords** page, on the **Security** page, click the **Web & CLI Passwords** tab (see Figure 109).

Figure 109 Web & CLI Passwords Page



Use the Web & CLI Passwords page to perform the following tasks:

- Change the administrator or monitor password for Web access (see <u>Changing Web Passwords</u> on page 214).
- Enable or disable CLI access for the administrator or monitor account (see <u>Enabling CLI Accounts</u> on page 215).
- Change the administrator or monitor password for CLI access (see <u>Changing CLI Passwords</u> on page 215).
- Reset the CLI administrator or monitor password to the factory default (see <u>Resetting CLI Passwords</u> on page 216).

Changing Web Passwords

Use the Web passwords when logging onto the remote management console as an administrator or monitor (see <u>Accessing Remote</u> <u>Management</u> on page 16).

To change the Web passwords:

- 1 Under Web Administrator Password or under Web Monitor Password, enter the following information:
 - Old Password Enter the old password.
 - New Password Enter the new password.
 - **Confirm New Password** Enter the new password again to confirm it.

Note: The default password is password.

- Note: Passwords are limited to 15 characters. All alphanumeric characters are allowed, as well as underscores (_) and hyphens (-).
- 2 Click Apply.

Enabling CLI Accounts

The CLI accounts provide access to the DXi V-Series command line interface as an administrator or monitor.

Note: For more information about using the CLI, see the *DXi V-Series Command Line Interface (CLI) Guide.*

To enable or disable the CLI accounts:

- 1 Under CLI Administrator Login Settings or under CLI Monitor Login Settings, do one of the following steps:
 - Select the **Enable CLI Login** check box to enable the CLI account.
 - Clear the **Enable CLI Login** check box to disable the CLI account.
- 2 Click Apply.

Changing CLI Passwords

Use the CLI passwords when logging onto the command line interface as an administrator or monitor.

To change the CLI passwords:

- 1 Under CLI Administrator Login Settings or under CLI Monitor Login Settings, select the Change password option.
- 2 Enter the following information:
 - Old Password Enter the old password.
 - New Password Enter the new password.
 - **Confirm New Password** Enter the new password again to confirm it.

- **Note:** The default password for the CLI Administrator account is **cliadmin**. The default password for the CLI Monitor account is **cliviewer**.
- **Note:** Passwords are limited to 15 characters. All alphanumeric characters are allowed, as well as underscores (_) and hyphens (-).
- 3 Click Apply.

Resetting CLI Passwords

The default password for the CLI Administrator account is **cliadmin**. The default password for the CLI Monitor account is **cliviewer**.

To reset the CLI account passwords to their default values:

- 1 Under CLI Administrator Login Settings or under CLI Monitor Login Settings, select the Reset password to factory default option.
- 2 Click Apply.

SSL

The **SSL** page allows you to enable or disable SSL on the DXi V-Series. You can also install a new SSL certificate to replace the Quantum default SSL certificate.

To access the **SSL** page, on the **Security** page, click the **SSL** tab (see Figure 110).

Figure 110 SSL Page

Use the SSL page to perform the following tasks:

 Enable or disable SSL on the DXi V-Series (see <u>Enabling SSL</u> on page 217).

Note: If you enable SSL, see <u>Server Authentication Warnings</u> on page 218 for important information about Web browser settings.

• Install a new SSL certificate (see <u>Installing an SSL Certificate</u> on page 218).

Enabling SSL

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) is a protocol that provides security and privacy over the Internet by negotiating encryption keys before transmitting data between a client and a server.

To establish a secure connection, the DXi V-Series must have an encryption key assigned to it by a Certification Authority in the form of a certificate file, private key file, and pass phrase. After you install these components, you can establish a secure connection using the SSL protocol. The DXi V-Series comes with a Quantum default SSL certificate.

To enable or disable SSL:

1 Under SSL Properties, select the Enable SSL option to enable SSL.

Or select the **Disable SSL** option to disable SSL.

Note: The default setting is disabled.

2 Click Apply.

Server Authentication Warnings

Enabling SSL with the default Quantum certificate allows you to securely communicate with the DXi V-Series Web-based interface using SSL encryption. However, you may receive a warning from your Web browser stating that the server you are attempting to connect to does not match the server embedded within the certificate.

This is expected behavior because the default certificate can only be used for encryption and not server authentication. You can install your own custom certificate in order to take advantage of server authentication in addition to encrypted communication.

To suppress server authentication warnings for the default certificate:

- Internet Explorer If a dialog box displays warning you of a
 possible certificate error, add the IP address for the DXi V-Series to
 the Trusted Sites list (Tools > Internet Options > Security >
 Trusted Sites). If subsequent warning pages display along with an
 option to close your Web browser or continue to the Web site, click
 Continue. This suppresses the warnings until you restart your Web
 browser.
- **Firefox** If the **Secure Connection Failed** dialog box displays, click the link at the bottom of the dialog box and follow the instructions to add an exception for your DXi V-Series.

Installing an SSL Certificate

You can purchase and install your own custom SSL certificate in order to take advantage of server authentication in addition to encrypted communication on the DXi V-Series.

To install an SSL certificate:

1 Under Certificate, click New.

The Install New Certificate page displays (see Figure 111).

Figure 111 Install New Certificate Page

Quantum		Logout Administrator He				
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Network Date & Time Security					
Replication	Web & CLI Passwords SSL Login Session Security Notice					
Status	Secure Socket Layer (SSL)	Help				
Alerts	Install New Certificate					
Configuration	Step 1 Upload your SSL certificate file.					
Utilities	Certificate File Browse					
Wizards	Note: The SSL certificate file to be uploaded must be named server.ort.					
Мар	Upload Cancel					
	Step 2 Upload your SSL private key file.					
DXI Advanced Reporting	Step 3 Enter your SSL passphrase and activate.					

2 In the **Certificate File** box, type the location and filename of the new SSL certificate file.

Or click **Browse** to browse the system and locate the SSL certificate file. The SSL certificate file must be named **server.crt**.

- 3 Click Upload.
- 4 Type your SSL private key and press <Enter>.
- 5 Type your SSL passphrase and press < Enter>.

A **Successful Upload** page displays stating that the SSL certificate file has been installed on the system.

6 Click OK.

The certificate displays in the **Certificate** section.

Login Session

The **Login Session** page allows you to specify the inactivity timeout for the DXi V-Series remote management console. The default timeout is 30 minutes.

When the remote management console is inactive for the specified period of time, the user is automatically logged off and must log back on to continue (see <u>Accessing Remote Management</u> on page 16).

To access the **Login Session** page, on the **Security** page, click **Login Session** (see Figure 112).

Figure 112 Login Session Page

Quantum	L DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:30/23 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administ	rator He
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
Home	Network Date & Time Security	
Replication	Web & CLI Passwords SSL Login Session Security Notice	
Status	Session Configuration	Help
Alerts	Inactivity Timeout (1-60 minutes) 30	
Configuration	Apply	
Utilities]
Wizards		
Мар		
DXI Advanced Reporting		

To specify the inactivity timeout:

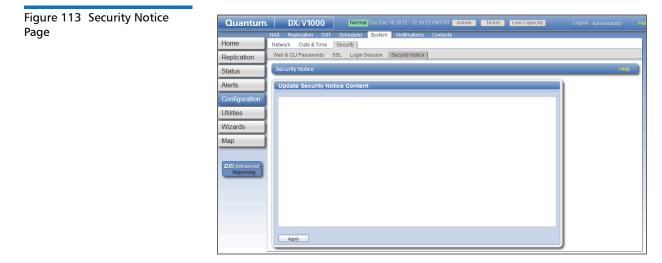
- 1 In the **Inactivity Timeout** box, enter the number of minutes of inactivity before a user is automatically logged off (1–60 minutes).
- 2 Click Apply.

Security Notice

The **Security Notice** page allows you to specify a message that will appear to all users when logging on to the remote management console or the CLI (command line interface).

If a security notice message has been specified, the user must accept the message in order to begin using the system. If no security notice has been specified, the user can use the system immediately after logging on.

To access the **Security Notice** page, on the **Security** page, click **Security Notice** (see Figure 113).



To add or update a security notice message, enter the message in the box and click **Apply**.

Notifications

The **Notifications** page allows you to manage the methods the DXi V-Series uses to send notifications. The DXi V-Series can send notifications by e-mail, or using SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol).

To access the **Notifications** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **Notifications** tab.

The Notifications page contains the following tabs:

- Email
- <u>SNMP</u>

Email

The **Email** page allows you to specify the recipients to notify by e-mail when administration alerts or service tickets occur. You can specify e-mail recipients, notification levels, and information about your e-mail

configuration. You can also configure the DXi V-Series to generate and send configuration and status reports.

Note: For more information about administration alerts and service tickets, see <u>DXi V-Series Alerts</u> on page 115.

To access the **Email** page, on the **Notifications** page, click the **Email** tab.

The Email page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Recipients</u>
- <u>Server</u>
- <u>Test</u>
- Email Reports

Recipients

The **Recipients** page allows you to manage the e-mail recipients the DXi V-Series sends notifications to. You can add, edit, and delete e-mail recipients, and you can specify the types of notifications to send.

Note: To enable the DXi V-Series to send e-mail, you must specify an outgoing e-mail server (see <u>Server</u> on page 227).

To access the **Recipients** page, on the **Email** page, click the **Recipients** tab (see Figure 114).

Figure 114 Recipients Page

Quantum	. DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:30:23 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
Home	Email SNMP	
Replication	Recipients Server Test Email Reports	
Status	Email Recipient List	Help
Alerts	Name Email Address Notification Type Notification Status	
Configuration	DXI0 techsup@quantum.com All Enabled	
Utilities		
Wizards		
Мар		
DXI Advanced Reporting		
	Add Delete	

Use the **Recipients** page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about e-mail recipients (see <u>Email Recipient List</u> on page 223).
- Add an e-mail recipient (see <u>Adding an E-mail Recipient</u> on page 224).
- Edit an e-mail recipient (see <u>Editing an E-mail Recipient</u> on page 225).
- Delete an e-mail recipient (see <u>Deleting an E-mail Recipient</u> on page 226).

Email Recipient List

The **Email Recipient List** displays the following information about email recipients:

- Name The name of the recipient.
- Email Address The e-mail address of the recipient.
- Notification Type The types of notifications sent to the recipient (High, High and Medium, or All).
- Notification Status The status of e-mail notifications for the recipient (Enabled or Disabled).

Adding an E-mail Recipient

Add an e-mail recipient to send notifications about administration alerts or service tickets to the recipient by e-mail.

To add an e-mail recipient:

1 Click Add

The Add Email Recipient page displays (see Figure 115).



- **2** Enter information about the recipient:
 - Name The name of the recipient.
 - Email Address The e-mail address of the recipient.
 - Notification Type Select the types of notifications to send to the recipient:
 - High Send e-mail notifications for High service tickets.

High service tickets indicate that a critical problem has occurred and needs to be resolved immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are degraded, and there is a risk of system failure or data loss.

High and Medium - Send e-mail notifications for High and Medium service tickets.

Medium service tickets indicate that a serious problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but it does not

Figure 115 Add Email **Recipient Page**

necessarily need to be fixed immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series may be degraded.

• All - Send e-mail notifications for High, Middle, and Low service tickets, as well as any administration alerts.

Low service tickets indicate that a minor problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but the operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are not significantly affected.

3 Select the **Enable notification** check box to enable sending of notifications to the recipient.

Or clear the **Enable notification** check box to disable sending of notifications to the recipient.

4 Click Apply.

Editing an E-mail Recipient

Edit an e-mail recipient to change the recipient's e-mail address or the types of notifications sent to the recipient. You can also enable or disable sending of notifications to the recipient.

To edit an e-mail recipient:

1 Click Edit.

The Edit Email Recipient page displays (see Figure 116).

Figure 116 Edit Email	Quantum	n. DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:30:23 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He
Recipient Page		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home	Email SNMP
	Replication	Recipients Server Test Email Reports
	Status	Edit Email Recipient Help
	Alerts	Edit Email Recipient 🖲
	Configuration	Name DXi0 -
	Utilities	*Email Address techsup@quantum.com
	Wizards	Contraction type All Contraction
	Мар	* Required Field
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Apply Reset Cancel

2 Enter information about the recipient:

Note: If you are editing an e-mail recipient, you cannot change the **Name**.

- Name (Optional) Select a different e-mail recipient to edit.
- Email Address The e-mail address of the recipient.
- Notification Type Select the types of notifications to send to the recipient:
 - High Send e-mail notifications for High service tickets.

High service tickets indicate that a critical problem has occurred and needs to be resolved immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are degraded, and there is a risk of system failure or data loss.

• **High and Medium** - Send e-mail notifications for High and Medium service tickets.

Medium service tickets indicate that a serious problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but it does not necessarily need to be fixed immediately. The operation and performance of the DXi V-Series may be degraded.

• All - Send e-mail notifications for High, Middle, and Low service tickets, as well as any administration alerts.

Low service tickets indicate that a minor problem occurred and needs to be resolved, but the operation and performance of the DXi V-Series are not significantly affected.

3 Select the **Enable notification** check box to enable sending of notifications to the recipient.

Or clear the **Enable notification** check box to disable sending of notifications to the recipient.

4 Click Apply.

Deleting an E-mail Recipient

Delete an e-mail recipient if you no longer want the DXi V-Series to send e-mail notifications to the recipient.

To delete an e-mail recipient, select the recipient and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple recipients to delete at once.

Server

The **Server** page allows you to specify the server for outgoing e-mail. The DXi V-Series cannot send e-mail notifications until you specify the outgoing e-mail server.

To access the **Server** page, on the **Email** page, click the **Server** tab (see <u>Figure 117</u>).

Figure 117 Server Page	Quantum. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12 30 23 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home Email SNMP
	Replication Recipients Server Test Email Reports
	Status Outgoing Email Server He
	Alerts No email server has been configured.
	Configuration *Hostname or IP Address
	Utilities * From Email Address
	Wizards * Required Field
	Map Apply Delete Reset
	DXI Advanced Reparring
	To enority the outgoing a mail conver

To specify the outgoing e-mail server:

- 1 In the Hostname or IP Address box, enter the hostname or IP address of the outgoing e-mail server.
 - **Note:** When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the **Network** page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

2 In the From Email Address box, enter the return e-mail address displayed in e-mails sent by the DXi V-Series.

Specify a return address that lets you easily identify the system that generated the e-mail (for example, systemname@any-domain.com). The return address must contain an @ symbol and a valid domain name, including a period.

3 Click Apply.

Test

The **Email Test** page allows you to send a test e-mail to verify that e-mail notifications are correctly configured on the DXi V-Series.

To access the **Email Test** page, on the **Email** page, click the **Test** tab (see Figure 118).



To send a test e-mail, select a recipient in the list and click **Send**. If the recipient does not receive the e-mail, make sure that the recipient's e-mail address is correct (see <u>Editing an E-mail Recipient</u> on page 225). Also make sure that the outgoing e-mail server is correct (see <u>Server</u> on page 227).

Email Reports

The **Email Reports** page allows you to specify the e-mail recipients for automatically generated reports. You can also generate reports on demand.

The system can generate a report with system status data or with configuration data. Each report also includes the system serial number, date and time, and a message that informs the recipient that the e-mail is automated and they should not respond to it.

Note: To enable the DXi V-Series to send e-mail, you must specify an outgoing e-mail server (see <u>Server</u> on page 227).

To access the **Email Home** page, on the **Email** page, click the **Email Home** tab.

The Email Home page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Recipients</u>
- On Demand

Recipients

The **Recipients** page allows you to specify the e-mail recipients who will receive all scheduled status data and configuration data reports.

Note: To configure the schedule when e-mail reports are sent, use the Configuration > Scheduler page (see <u>Scheduling E-mail</u> <u>Reports</u> on page 189).

To access the **Recipients** page, on the **Email Home** page, click the **Recipients** tab (see Figure 119).

Figure 119 Recipients Page

Enter the e-mail addresses of up to three recipients in the boxes, and then click **Apply**. When the DXi generates scheduled e-mail reports, they will be sent to the specified addresses.

Note: You cannot edit the first recipient.

On Demand

The **On Demand** page allows you to manually generate a status data or configuration data report. The report is immediately sent to the specified e-mail recipient. You can also view configuration data.

To access the **On Demand** page, on the **Email Home** page, click the **On Demand** tab (see <u>Figure 120</u>).

Figure 120 On Demand Page

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12 36:00 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Email SNMP
Replication	Recipients Server Test Email Reports Recipients On Demand
Status Alerts	Email Home On Demand
Configuration Utilities	No email server has been configured.(Configure) Email Type © Status data
Wizards Map	Configuration data Send To (optional) Send Reset View
DXI Advanced Reporting	

Use the **On Demand** page to perform the following tasks:

- Manually send a status data or configuration data report (see <u>Sending a Report</u> on page 231).
- View a configuration data report (see <u>Viewing Configuration Data</u> on page 231).

Sending a Report

To manually send a status data or configuration data report:

- 1 Under Email Type, select the type of report to send (Status data or Configuration data).
- 2 In the Send To box, enter the e-mail address of the recipient.

An e-mail address is required for sending **Configuration data**. For **Status data**, if you do not enter an e-mail address, the report is sent to **DXiLogger.ScriptData@quantum.com**.

3 Click Send.

Viewing Configuration Data

To view a configuration data report:

- 1 Under Email Type, select Configuration data.
- 2 Click View.

The System Configuration Report window displays.

3 (Optional) Click **Save** to save a local copy of the report in TXT format.

SNMP

The **SNMP** page allows you to configure the DXi V-Series to send status messages using SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol). The DXi V-Series supports SNMP v1 and v2c.

SNMP works by sending messages, called protocol data units (PDUs), to different parts of a network, or communities. SNMP compliant devices, called agents, store data about themselves in Management Information Bases (MIBs) and return this data to the SNMP requesters.

You can configure the DXi V-Series to act as an agent and send traps to a specified destination. You can also add SNMP community information.

To access the **SNMP** page, on the **Notifications** page, click the **SNMP** tab.

The **SNMP** page contains the following tabs:

- Destinations
- <u>Community</u>
- <u>Test</u>

Destinations

The **Destinations** page allows you to manage the destinations the DXi V-Series sends SNMP traps to. You can add, edit, and delete SNMP destinations, and you can specify the types of traps to send.

To access the **Destinations** page, on the **SNMP** page, click the **Destinations** tab (see <u>Figure 121</u> on page 233).

Figure 121 Destinations Page

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:36:00 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
Home	Email SNMP	
Replication	Destinations Community Test	
Status	Trap Destination List	Help
Alerts	IP Address Name Selected Traps	
Configuration	10.1.1.1 public Failure	
Utilities		
Wizards		
Мар		
	Add Edit Delete	
DXI Advanced Reporting		

Use the **Destinations** page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about SNMP destinations (see <u>Trap Destination</u> <u>List</u> on page 233).
- Add an SNMP destination (see <u>Adding a Destination</u> on page 233).
- Edit an SNMP destination (see Editing a Destination on page 235).
- Delete an SNMP destination (see <u>Deleting a Destination</u> on page 236).

Trap Destination List

The **Trap Destination List** displays the following information about SNMP destinations:

- IP Address The IP address of the destination.
- Name The name of the destination.
- Selected Traps The traps the DXi V-Series sends to the destination (Failure, Warning, Informational, Available, or Unavailable).

Adding a Destination

Add an SNMP destination to send traps from the DXi V-Series to the destination.

Note: You can add up to 5 destinations.

To add a destination:

1 Click Add.

The Add Trap Destination page displays (see Figure 122).

Figure 122 Add Trap	Quantum.	DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12 36:00 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He
Destination Page		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home	Email SNMP
	Replication	Destinations Community Test
	Status	Add Trap Destination Help
	Alerts	Add Trap Destination ①
	Configuration	* IP Address
	Utilities	* Name public
	Wizards	Selected Traps
	Мар	III Warning
		Informational
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Available
		Unavailable
		* Required Field
		Apply Reset Cancel
	L	

- 2 Enter information about the destination:
 - IP Address Enter the IP address of the system that will receive the traps generated by the DXi V-Series.

Note: When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

Note: To use hostname format, you must specify at least one DNS IP address on the Network page (see <u>Network</u> on page 193).

- Name Enter the name of the destination.
- **3** Select one or more traps to send to the destination:
 - Failure Sends failure traps.
 - Warning Sends warning traps.
 - Informational Sends informational traps.

- Available Sends a trap when the system transitions from an unavailable to an available state.
- **Unavailable** Sends a trap when the system transitions from an available to an unavailable state.
- 4 Click Apply.

Editing a Destination

Edit an SNMP destination to change the name of the destination or the types of traps the DXi V-Series sends to the destination.

To edit a destination:

1 Click Edit.

The Edit Trap Destination page displays (see Figure 123).

Iministrator Hel
Help

2 Enter information about the destination:

Note: If you are editing a destination, you cannot change the IP Address.

- IP Address (Optional) Select a different destination to edit.
- Name Enter the name of the destination.
- 3 Select one or more traps to send to the destination:

- Failure Sends failure traps.
- Warning Sends warning traps.
- Informational Sends informational traps.
- Available Sends a trap when the system transitions from an unavailable to an available state.
- **Unavailable** Sends a trap when the system transitions from an available to an unavailable state.
- 4 Click Apply.

Deleting a Destination

Delete an SNMP destination if you no longer want the DXi V-Series to send traps to the destination.

To delete a destination, select the destination and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple destinations to delete at once.

Community

The **Community** page allows you to manage SNMP community information for the DXi V-Series. You can add, edit, and delete communities, and you can specify the community access type.

To access the **Community** page, on the **SNMP** page, click the **Community** tab (see Figure 124).

Figure 124 Community Page

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:36:00 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts	
Home	Email SNMP	
Replication	Destinations Community Test	
Status	SNMP Community List	Help
Alerts	Name IP Address Network Mask Access Type Community Status	
Configuration	Community1 10.40.0.0 255.255.0.0 Get Enabled	
Utilities		
Wizards		
Мар		
DXI Advanced Reporting		
	Add Edit Delete	

Use the **Community** page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about SNMP communities (see <u>SNMP Community</u> <u>List</u> on page 237).
- Add an SNMP community (see Adding a Community on page 237).
- Edit an SNMP community (see Editing a Community on page 239).
- Delete an SNMP community (see <u>Deleting a Community</u> on page 241).

SNMP Community List

The **SNMP Community List** displays the following information about SNMP communities:

- Name The name of the community.
- IP Address The IP address of the community.
- Network Mask The network mask of the community.
- Access Type The access type of the community (Get or Get/Set).
- Community Status The status of the community (Enabled or Disabled).

Adding a Community

Add an SNMP community to include the DXi V-Series in a group of devices that are monitored by a common management station.

Note: If no communities are defined, the SNMP agent is not accessible.

To add a community:

1 Click Add.

The Add SNMP Community page displays (see Figure 125).

Figure 125 Add SNMP Community Page

Quantum.	DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:36:00 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administration	
Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Email SNMP	
Replication	Destinations Community Test	
Status	Add SNMP Community	Help
Alerts Configuration Utilities Wizards Map	*Name *IP Address *IP Address *Network Mask Access Type Get Community status *Required Field Apply Reset Cancel	
Reporting		

2 In the Name box, enter a unique Name for the community (up to 20 characters).

Valid characters are letters, numbers, hyphens, and underscores.

3 Enter a valid IP Address and Network Mask pair.

A pair is valid if performing a logical bitwise **AND** operation on the IP address and the network mask results in the IP address. See the table below for examples:

IP Address / Network Mask	Result
10.40.166.87 255.255.255.255	Allows access only from 10.40.166.87
10.40.166.87 10.40.166.87	Allows access only from 10.40.166.87

IP Address / Network Mask	Result
10.40.166.87 10.40.166.0	Invalid because the logical bitwise operation (address AND mask) is not equal to the address
10.40.166.87 255.255.0.0	Invalid because the logical bitwise operation (address AND mask) is not equal to the address
10.40.0.0 255.255.0.0	Allows access from any client with address 10.40.xx.xx

Note: If you define a single community and set both the IP address and network mask to 0.0.0.0 (or leave both blank), then IP address-based access control is disabled. In this case, the SNMP agent is accessible from any IP address.

Note: When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

- 4 In the Access Type drop-down box, select the access type for the community:
 - Get Allows SNMP get operations.
 - Get/Set Allows both SNMP get and put operations.
- 5 Select the Community status check box to enable the community.

Or clear the **Community status** check box to disable the community.

6 Click Apply.

Editing a Community

Edit an SNMP community to change the IP address or access type for the community. You can also enable or disable the community.

To edit a community:

1 Click Edit.

The Edit SNMP Community page displays (see Figure 125).

Aunity Page

- 2 (Optional) In the Name box, select a different community to edit.
- 3 Enter a valid IP Address and Network Mask pair.

A pair is valid if performing a logical bitwise AND operation on the IP address and the network mask results in the IP address. See the table below for examples:

IP Address / Network Mask	Result
10.40.166.87 255.255.255.255	Allows access only from 10.40.166.87
10.40.166.87 10.40.166.87	Allows access only from 10.40.166.87
10.40.166.87 10.40.166.0	Invalid because the logical bitwise operation (address AND mask) is not equal to the address

Figure Comn

IP Address / Network Mask	Result
10.40.166.87 255.255.0.0	Invalid because the logical bitwise operation (address AND mask) is not equal to the address
10.40.0.0 255.255.0.0	Allows access from any client with address 10.40.xx.xx

Note: If you define a single community and set both the IP address and network mask to 0.0.0.0 (or leave both blank), then IP address-based access control is disabled. In this case, the SNMP agent is accessible from any IP address.

Note: When entering IP addresses, never use an address that is in a reserved IP address range. To see a list of reserved IP address ranges, click the quick tip icon [?] located near the IP address field.

- 4 In the Access Type drop-down box, select the access type for the community:
 - Get Allows SNMP get operations.
 - Get/Set Allows both SNMP get and put operations.
- 5 Select the Community status check box to enable the community.

Or clear the **Community status** check box to disable the community.

6 Click Apply.

Deleting a Community

Delete an SNMP community if you no longer want the DXi V-Series to belong to a group of devices that are monitored by a common management station.

To delete a community, select the community and click **Delete**.

Note: You can select multiple communities to delete at once.

Test

The **SNMP Test** page allows you to send a test SNMP trap to verify that SNMP is correctly configured on the DXi V-Series.

To access the **SNMP Test** page, on the **SNMP** page, click the **Test** tab (see <u>Figure 127</u>).

Figure 127 SNMP Test Page	Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:36:00 PM RST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator He
		NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts
	Home	Email SNMP
	Replication	Destinations Community Test
	Status	Send Test Trap Help
	Alerts	IP Address Name Selected Traps
	Configuration	10.1.1.1 public Failure
	Utilities	
	Wizards	
	Мар	
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Send Reset

To send a test SNMP trap, select a destination in the list and click **Send**. If the destination does not receive the SNMP trap, make sure that the destination IP address is correct (see <u>Editing a Destination</u> on page 235). Also make sure that the community information is correct (see <u>Community</u> on page 236).

Contacts

The **Contacts** page allows you to enter company information. You can also enter individual contact information for primary and secondary contacts.

To access the **Contacts** page, click the **Configuration** menu, and then click the **Contacts** tab.

The **Contacts** page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Company</u>
- <u>Primary and Secondary</u>

Company

The **Company** page allows you to enter information about the company and location of the DXi V-Series.

To access the **Company** page, on the **Contacts** page, click the **Company** tab (see <u>Figure 128</u>).

Figure 128 Company Page

Quantum	DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Tue Dec 1	18 2012 - 12:36:00 PM PST (Admin Ticket	Low Capacity	
	NAS Replication OST	Scheduler System	Notifications Contacts			
Home	Company Primary S	Secondary				
Replication	Company Information					Help
Status	Company Name					
Alerts	Street					
Configuration	City					
Utilities	State					
Wizards	Postal Code					
Мар	Country					
	DXiV1000 Location					
DXI Advanced Reporting	Support Contract					
	Apply					
	<u></u>					

To enter company information:

- 1 Enter the following information:
 - Company Name Enter the company name.
 - Street Enter the company street address.
 - City Enter the company city.
 - State Enter the company state.
 - Postal Code Enter the company postal code.
 - Country Enter the company country.
 - **DXi V-Series Location** Enter the physical location of the DXi V-Series (for example, data center).

- **Support Contract** Enter the support contract number for the DXi V-Series.
- 2 Click Apply.

Primary and Secondary

The **Primary** and **Secondary** pages allow you to enter information about the primary and secondary contacts for the DXi V-Series.

To access the **Primary** or **Secondary** page, on the **Contacts** page, click the **Primary** or **Secondary** tab (see <u>Figure 129</u>).

Home	NAS Replication OST Scheduler System Notifications Contacts Company Primary Secondary
Replication	Primary Contact Information
Status	Name
Alerts	Email Address
Configuration	Phone
Utilities	Fax
Wizards	Pager
Мар	Street
	City
DXI Advanced Reporting	State
	Postal Code
	Country
	Apply

To enter primary or secondary contact information:

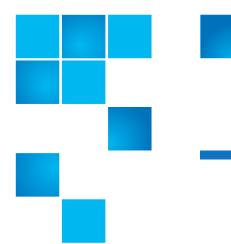
- **1** Enter the following information:
 - Name Enter the contact name.
 - Email Address (Required) Enter the contact e-mail address.
 - Phone Enter the contact phone number.
 - Fax Enter the contact fax number.
 - Pager Enter the contact pager number.
 - Street Enter the contact street address.
 - City Enter the contact city.
 - State Enter the contact state.

Quantum DXi V-Series User's Guide

Figure 129 Primary and Secondary Pages

- **Postal Code** Enter the contact postal code.
- **Country** Enter the contact country.
- 2 Click Apply.

Chapter 8: DXi V-Series Configuration Contacts



Chapter 9 DXi V-Series Utilities

The **Utilities** pages to perform maintenance tasks on the DXi V-Series, such as generating and downloading diagnostic files, analyzing disk and network performance, managing space reclamation, and securely erasing the system. You can also install license keys, upgrade the system software, and reboot or shut down the DXi V-Series.

To access the Utilities pages, click the Utilities menu.

The Utilities pages contain the following tabs:

- Diagnostics
- <u>Analyzer</u>
- Space Reclamation
- <u>Secure Shred</u>
- License Keys
- <u>Software Upgrade</u>
- Reboot & Shutdown

Diagnostics

The **Diagnostics** page allows you to generate and download diagnostic files. You can also perform healthchecks to verify the health and integrity of the data deduplication blockpool.

The diagnostic files are helpful when troubleshooting problems on the DXi V-Series. Generate and download the diagnostic files before contacting Quantum customer support.

To access the **Diagnostics** page, click the **Utilities** menu, and then click the **Diagnostics** tab.

The **Diagnostics** page contains the following tabs:

- System Diag File
- <u>Healthchecks</u>

System Diag File

The **System Diag File** page allows you to generate and download a system diagnostics file. This file contains the diagnostic logs for all of the system components.

To access the **System Diag File** page, on the **Diagnostics** page, click the **System Diag File** tab (see <u>Figure 130</u>).

Figure 130 System Diag File Page

Quantum	I. DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:41:01 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator He
	Diagnostics Analyzer Space Reclamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown	
Home	System Diag File Healthchecks	
Replication	Generate/Download System Diagnostics File	Help
Status	Note: After generating a System Diagnostics File, you can download it to your desktop and email or fip the file to	
Alerts	Quantum. Contact Quantum support for more information.	
Configuration	The last file was generated on Tue Dec 18 12:40:55 2012	
Utilities	Generate New Download Current	
Wizards		
Мар		
DXI Advanced		
Reporting		

To generate and download a system diagnostics file:

1 Click Generate New to generate a new system diagnostics file.

The system generates a new diagnostics file. This can take several minutes.

- 2 After the file finishes generating, click the link to enable the **Download Current** button.
- **3** To download the generated diagnostics file, click **Download Current**.

A dialog box displays asking if you want to open or save the file.

4 Click Save or OK to download the file.

Healthchecks

The **Healthchecks** page allows you to perform tests that verify the health and integrity of the data deduplication blockpool. You can also enable and disable healthchecks.

Note: To configure the DXi V-Series to automatically run the healthchecks at specified intervals, use the **Configuration** > Scheduler page (see <u>Scheduling Healthchecks</u> on page 189).

To access the **Healthchecks** page, on the **Diagnostics** page, click the **Healthchecks** tab.

Chapter 9: DXi V-Series Utilities Diagnostics

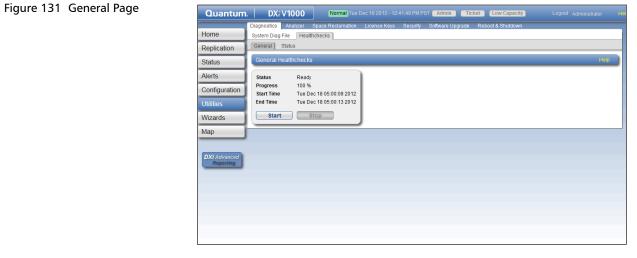
The Healthchecks page contains the following tabs:

- <u>General</u>
- <u>Status</u>

General

The **General** page allows you to start running the healthchecks or stop them if they are already running. When you start the healthchecks, only the healthchecks that are currently enabled are run (see <u>Status</u> on page 251).

To access the **General** page, on the **Healthchecks** page, click the **General** tab (see Figure 131).



The **General** page displays the following information about the most recently run healthchecks:

- Status The status of the healthchecks (In Progress, Success, Failed, or Interrupted).
- **Progress** The percentage complete of the healthchecks.
- Start Time The time the healthchecks started.
- End Time The time the healthchecks ended.

Use the **General** page to perform the following tasks:

- To start all enabled healthchecks, click Start.
- To stop all healthchecks in progress, click **Stop**.

Status

The **Status** page allows you to view information about the most recent test results for each healthcheck. You can also enable or disable a healthcheck.

The following healthchecks are available:

- **De-Duplication** Checks the overall health of the blockpool. This healthcheck verifies that the metadata in the namespace file and the data tags in the blockpool are correctly in sync.
- Integrity Checks the integrity of data in the blockpool. This healthcheck examines a sample of data tags in the blockpool and verifies that the data has been properly stored without errors or corruption.

To access the **Status** page, on the **Healthchecks** page, click the **Status** tab (see Figure 132).

Diagnostics Analyzer Space Redamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown Home System Diag File Healthchecks	
Replication General Status	
Status Healthcheck Status	Help
Alerts Most Recent Healthcheck Test Results	
Configuration Healthcheck Name State Started Finished Status De-Duplication enabled Tue Dec 18 05:00:10 2012 Tue Dec 18 05:00:11 2012 Success	
Utilities Integrity disabled Ready	
Wizards	
Map	
DXI Advanced	
Reporting	

The **Status** page displays the following information about the most recently run test for each healthcheck:

• Healthcheck Name - The name of the healthcheck.

Figure 132 Status Page

- State The state of the healthcheck (enabled or disabled).
- Started The time the healthcheck started.
- Finished The time the healthcheck ended.
- Status The status of the healthcheck (Success or Failed).

Note: If running a healthcheck results in the Contact Support status, contact Quantum Customer Support for further assistance.

To enable or disable a healthcheck:

1 Select the healthcheck and click Edit.

The Edit Healthcheck page displays (see Figure 133).

Figure 133 Edit Healthcheck	Quantum. DX; V1000 Norma] Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12 43 03 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logout Administrator	Hel
Page	Diagnostics Analyzer Space Redamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown Home System Diag File Healthchecks	٦
	Replication General Status	
	Status Edit Healthcheck Help	I
	Alerts De-Duplication Healthcheck	
	Configuration Enable De-Duplication healthcheck test	
	Utilities (Apply) Cancel	
	Wizards	
	Map	
	DXI Advanced Reporting	

2 Select the check box to enable the healthcheck.

Or clear the check box to disable the healthcheck.

3 Click Apply.

Note: When healthchecks are run (manually or scheduled), only enabled healthchecks are run.

Caution: If a healthcheck fails when it is run, there may be a problem in the blockpool that could cause replication or restore operations to fail. Contact Quantum customer support if a healthcheck fails.

Analyzer

The **Analyzer** page allows you to analyze the network and disk performance of the DXi V-Series.

To access the **Analyzer** page, click the **Utilities** menu, and then click the **Analyzer** tab.

The Analyzer page contains the following tabs:

- <u>Network</u>
- <u>Disk</u>

Network

The **Network Analyzer** page allows you to analyze network performance by measuring network throughput between the DXi V-Series and another system (such as another DXi system).

To access the **Network Analyzer** page, on the **Analyzer** page, click the **Network** tab.

The Network Analyzer page contains the following tabs:

- Performance
- <u>Settings</u>

Performance

The **Performance** page allows you to perform network analysis with another system (the target). You can also view results from the most recently run test To access the **Performance** page, on the **Network Analyzer** page, click the **Performance** tab (see <u>Figure 134</u>).

Figure 134 Performance Page

Quantum	. DX; V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:43:40 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	
Home	Diagnostics Analyzer Space Reclamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown Network Disk	
Replication	Performance Settings	
Status	NetServer Settings	Help
Alerts	Perform Network Analysis of this DXi using another DXi.	
Configuration	 Network throughput is the maximum bandwidth available between this DXi and the target DXi. NetServer should be enabled on the Utilities > Analyzer > Network > Settings page of the target DXi 	
Utilities	 NetServer should be enabled on the utilities > Analyzer > Network > Settings page of the target DAI specified below. 	
Wizards	* Target IP Address Start	
Мар	* Required Field	
	Result From Last Run	
DXI Advanced Reporting	Note: Result refresh takes about 5 seconds. Analysis Of Throughput	
	Network No data	

To perform network analysis:

1 In the **Target IP Address** box, enter the IP address of the system to perform network analysis with.

The target system must have NetServer enabled (see <u>Settings</u> on page 254).

2 Click Start.

The throughput result is displayed under **Result From Last Run** in MB/s.

Note: It takes approximately 5 seconds to refresh the results.

Settings

The **Settings** page allows you to enable or disable NetServer on the DXi V-Series. NetServer must be enabled on the target DXi system to perform network analysis with the system (see <u>Performance</u> on page 253).

To access the **Settings** page, on the **Network Analyzer** page, click the **Settings** tab (see Figure 135).

Figure 135 Settings Page

Quantum	n. DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:45:10 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator
Home	Diagnostics Analyzer Space Reclamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Rebool & Shuldown Network Disk	
Replication	Performance Settings	
Status	Network Analyzer	Help
Alerts	Enable NetServer Disable NetServer	
Configuration Utilities		
Wizards		
Мар	j –	
DXI Advanced Reporting		

To enable or disable NetServer on the target DXi V-Series:

1 Select Enable NetServer to enable NetServer.

Or select **Disable NetServer** to disable NetServer.

2 Click Apply.

Note: You should disable NetServer on the target system when you are done analyzing network performance.

Disk

The **Disk Analyzer** page allows you to analyze disk performance by measuring disk read and write throughput.

To access the **Disk Analyzer** page, on the **Analyzer** page, click the **Disk** tab (see Figure 136).

Figure 136 Disk Analyzer Page

Quantum	. DX <i>i</i> V1000	Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 12:45	5:51 PM PST Admin Tic	ket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator	н
	Diagnostics Analyzer Space	Reclamation License Keys	Security Software Upgrade	Reboot & Shutdown		
Home	Network Disk					
Replication	Disk Analyzer				Help	
Status	Perform System Disk Ana	vsis				ì
Alerts	Start	, sis.				l
Configuration	Result From Last Run)			l
Utilities		5 seconds to refresh the result.				l
Wizards	Analysis Of Disk Read	Throughput No data				I
Мар	Disk Write	No data				I
			,			J
DXI Advanced Reporting						_
		-				

To perform disk analysis, click **Start**. The throughput result is displayed under **Result From Last Run** in KB/s.

Note: It takes approximately 5 seconds to refresh the results.

Space Reclamation

The **Space Reclamation** page allows you to manage space reclamation activity on the DXi V-Series. You can start or stop space reclamation. You can also monitor the progress of space reclamation activity.

During space reclamation, the DXi V-Series searches the blockpool for tags that are no longer referenced and then deletes the unneeded tags to free up space.

Caution: For correct system operation, space reclamation *must* be run at regular intervals (at least once a week). Quantum recommends creating a schedule to automatically run space reclamation (see <u>Scheduling Space Reclamation</u> on page 190). Because space reclamation can affect system performance, avoid running space reclamation during known backup periods.

The space reclamation process can include up to four stages (see <u>Space</u> <u>Reclamation Status</u> on page 259).

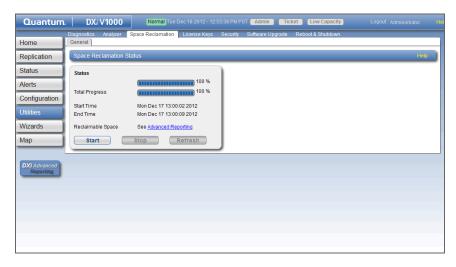
• New or Normal Mode - To increase performance, when space reclamation is initiated on the Space Reclamation page or as a scheduled event, only Stage 2 (Calculating Deletion Candidates) and Stage 3 (Deleting New Candidates) are run.

Note: Stage 1 and 4 are not required in Normal mode because the DXi can automatically compact reclaimable space as needed and use it to store new deduplicated data.

• Low Space or Legacy Mode - When disk capacity is low, space reclamation is automatically started to free up disk space. In this case, all four stages of space reclamation are run.

To access the **Space Reclamation** page, click the **Utilities** menu, and then click the **Space Reclamation** tab (see Figure 137).

Figure 137 Space Reclamation Page



The **Space Reclamation** page displays the following information about the current or most recent space reclamation activity:

- **Status** The status of space reclamation (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> <u>Status</u> on page 259).
- Total Progress The progress of space reclamation activity.
- Start Time The time space reclamation started.
- End Time The time space reclamation ended.
- Reclaimable Space/Space Reclaimed Displays Pending when space reclamation is running. When space reclamation is complete, click the link to view detailed statistics on the Capacity Report -Disk Usage Graph in DXi Advanced Reporting.

Note: For help using the **Capacity Report**, click the help button on the upper right of the DXi Advanced Reporting window.

Note: Because the DXi can automatically use reclaimable space to store new deduplicated data, space reclamation statistics may be affected (appear lower) if ingest occurs at the same time as space reclamation.

Use the **Space Reclamation** page to perform the following tasks:

• To start space reclamation, click Start.

- To stop space reclamation, click **Stop**.
- To update the display while space reclamation is running, click **Refresh**.

Space Reclamation Status

Space reclamation can have one of the following statuses:

- **Reclamation Completed** Space reclamation completed without errors.
- **Reclamation Started by User** Space reclamation was started manually by a user.
- **Reclamation Interrupted** Space reclamation was interrupted and must be restarted.
- **Reclamation Interrupted by User** Space reclamation was interrupted by a user and must be restarted.
- Reclamation Interrupted Error Encountered Space reclamation was interrupted because an error was encountered and must be restarted.
- Reclamation Interrupt by User Cannot be interrupted at this time Because the system is in a Low Space state, space reclamation cannot be stopped. Wait for space reclamation to finish freeing up disk space.
- Reclamation Completed No Candidates To Delete Space reclamation completed, but there were no candidates for reclamation.
- Reclaim Existing Blockpool Freed Space The existing blockpool space has been reclaimed for use.
- Stage 1 of 4 Reclaim Disk Space (Initial).
- Stage 2 of 4 Calculating Deletion Candidates.
- Stage 3 of 4 Deleting New Candidates.
- Stage 4 of 4 Reclaim Disk Space.

License Keys

The License Keys page allows you to add a license key to the DXi V-Series to enable new functionality. You can also see the licenses that are installed on the system.

To access the License Keys page, click the Utilities menu, and then click the License Keys tab (see Figure 138).

Figure 138 License Keys Page	Quantum. DX; V1000 Norma] Tue Dec 18 2012 - 1:03:17 PM PST Admin Ticket (Low Capacity Logout Administrator H
	Diagnostics Analyzer Space Reclamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown
	Home License Keys Help
	Replication
	Status License Key
	Alerts Retrieve License Key from the server
	Configuration Upload License Key
	Utilities * License Key Browse Note: The License Key to be uploaded must be named license crt.
	Wizards
	Map O License Key
	DXI Advanced Reporting
	Apply

Use the License Keys page to perform the following tasks:

- View information about installed licenses (see License Key) Information on page 260).
- Add a license key (see Adding a License Key on page 261).

License Key Information

The License Keys page displays the following information about the licenses that are installed on the DXi V-Series:

• License Type - The type of license currently installed on the DXi V-Series (Permanent, Subscription, or Time-Based).

Note: For **Time-Based** licenses, the time remaining on the license is also displayed.

- Capacity The current licensed capacity of the DXi V-Series.
- Installed On The date a license was last installed.

Available Licenses

The following licenses are included with the DXi V-Series.

- NAS Enables NAS (NFS, CIFS) connectivity.
- Data Deduplication Enables data deduplication and compression.
- Replication Enables replication to other DXi systems.
- Storage Capacity Enables the purchased storage capacity for the system.
 - DXi V1000 Trial Edition 256 GB of storage capacity.
 - DXi V1000 Standard Edition 1 TB of storage capacity.
 - DXi V1000 Enterprise Edition 1 TB of storage capacity, expandable to 2 TB.
 - DXi V4000 Enterprise Edition 4 TB of storage capacity, expandable to 24 TB in 1 TB increments.

If you purchase a storage capacity upgrade, you will receive a new Product Key certificate (see <u>Adding a License Key</u> on page 261).

• OST - Enables OpenStorage backup with Symantec OST.

Adding a License Key	Add a license key to enable new functionality on the DXi V-Series, for example, to add capacity or extend a Time-Based license.		
	Note: Contact your Quantum sales representative to purchase a license. You will receive a License Certificate with instructions for obtaining and installing the license key.		
	There are three methods for adding a license key:		

(Recommended) <u>Automatically Retrieving a License Key</u>

- Uploading a License Key File
- Entering a License Key

Automatically Retrieving a License Key

The DXi V-Series automatically checks the license server each day to make sure the appropriate licenses are installed, based on your product serial number. If you have purchased a license but the DXi V-Series has not yet automatically retrieved the license, you can follow the procedure below to prompt the system to check for the new license and install it.

To automatically retrieve a license key from the license server:

- 1 On the License Keys page, select the Retrieve License Key from the server option.
- 2 Click Apply.

The DXi V-Series automatically retrieves and installs the appropriate licenses based on the product serial number.

Note: To automatically retrieve license keys, the DXi V-Series must have access to the Internet. In addition, firewall port 443 (HTTPS) must be open on the network.

Uploading a License Key File

Use this method to install a license if Internet access via HTTPS (port 443) is not available and you have a **license.crt** file.

To manually upload a license key file:

- 1 Follow the instructions on the License Certificate you received to obtain the license key file.
- 2 On the License Keys page, select the Upload License Key option.
- **3** Click **Browse** to browse the system and locate the license key file. The license key file must be named **license.crt**.
- 4 Click Apply.

The license key is installed on the system.

Entering a License Key

Use this method to install a license if Internet access via HTTPS (port 443) is not available and you have a license key.

To manually enter a license key:

- 1 Follow the instructions on the License Certificate you received to obtain the license key.
- 2 On the License Keys page, select the License Key option.
- 3 Copy the license key and then paste it into the License Key box.
- 4 Click Apply.

The license key is installed on the system.

Secure Shred

The **Secure Shred** page allows you to securely and permanently erase sensitive data stored on the DXi V-Series. To securely erase data, first delete files on NAS shares or storage servers, then start secure shred. During secure shred, all residual data associated with the deleted files is securely erased from the disk drives by performing a single-pass overwrite with zeros.

While secure shred is running, the DXi V-Series operates in limited mode. This means you cannot perform backups or restores, all scheduled jobs (including replication jobs) are stopped, and you cannot access or use any other features of the DXi. If necessary, you can cancel secure shred at any time and return the DXi to normal operation.

Caution: The secure shred process can take multiple days to complete.

Secure Shred and Virtual Machines

Secure shred behaves differently when it is run on a virtual machine compared to a physical system. Keep in mind the following information when running secure shred on a DXi V-Series:

- The secure shred function will zero out all empty space, up to a maximum of 2 TB (DXi V1000) or 24 TB (DXi V4000) of storage, regardless of the licensed capacity of the DXi V-Series. Make sure that the storage system has a full 2 TB (DXi V1000) or 24 TB (DXi V4000) of disk space available before running secure shred.
 - **Note:** If the DXi V-Series is deployed on a thin-provisioned virtual disk, this will be converted to a thick-provisioned virtual disk if secure shred is run. (No capacity change will occur if the disk is already thick-provisioned.)
- The secure shred function is only effective on the current datastore location of the DXi V-Series. If the datastore has changed physical storage arrays since the DXi V-Series began operation, residual un-shredded data may be left in previously stored locations.
- For additional security, or in cases where the DXi V-Series may frequently migrate between physical storage arrays, you may choose to use VMware's virtual machine encryption option. While residual data would still be left after a migration, that data would be encrypted and unreadable without the appropriate password.

Running Secure Shred

To access the **Secure Shred** page, click the **Utilities** menu, and then click the **Security** tab (see Figure 139).

Figure 139 Secure Shred Page	Quantum Home Replication Status Alerts Configuration Utilities Wizards Map	DX/ V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012- 12:55:06 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity Logod Administrator Diagnostics Analyzer Space Redamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown Secure Shed Secure File Shred Secure File Shred Secure Shed process can take days to complete. The system must stop all jobs during this time. The system must stop all jobs during this time. The system will reboot during this process. Last movied None Last successful None Last result No
	DXI Advanced Reporting	Lat error string None

To securely erase data on the DXi V-Series:

- 1 Delete the data you want to securely erase:
 - Delete files on NAS shares, or delete the shares (see <u>NAS</u> on page 127).
 - Delete backup images on OST logical storage units (LSUs), or delete the LSUs and storage servers (see <u>OST</u> on page 151).
- 2 Run space reclamation from the **Utilities > Space Reclamation** page (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 256).
- **3** If the DXi V-Series is *not* in Low Capacity condition (the **Low Capacity** indicator in the banner is not lit), then you must manually run space reclamation Stage 4 using the command line interface (CLI) console with the following command:

syscli --start compaction

Note: For more information about using the CLI console, see the *DXi-Series Command Line Interface (CLI) Guide* (6-67081).

Note: If the DXi V-Series is in Low Capacity condition (the **Low Capacity** indicator in the banner is lit), then you can skip this step.

- 4 Make sure all replication and backup jobs are completed (see <u>DXi V-Series Replication</u> on page 69).
- 5 On the Secure Shred page, click Start Shred.

A warning message displays.

6 Click Yes.

The system reboots and begins the secure shred process. This process can take multiple days to complete.

- 7 To check the status of secure shred, log onto the DXi V-Series to view the limited Secure Shred Mode interface (see Figure 140).
 - The Secure File Shred Log displays details about the secure shred progress. Click Hide to hide the log.
 - To cancel the secure shred process, click **Cancel**. The DXi reboots and resumes normal operation.

• When the secure shred process is complete, the **Reboot** button displays.

Note: You must log on as an Admin user to cancel secure shred or reboot the system.

Figure 140 Secure Shred Mode Interface

	Quantum. DXiV1000	Tue Dec 18 2012 - 1:31:09 PM PST	SECURE SHRED MODE	Logout Administrator Help
	Secure File Shred			Help
	Secure File Shred Status & Log Details]
	Secure File Shred in progress			Status Ok
]- Task Complete: 6% - Overall Status: Step 2 of	f 3 - Overall Complete: 35% - Estimated Time: 5	i3m 57s
When secure shred is ———— complete, Cancel changes to Reboot	Cancel			
to Reboot	Hide Secure File Shred Log Details	Secure File Shred		
2012-12-18 13:2243 Source Street initiated 2012-12-18 13:2844 SUFS-DEFRAD: Started mef-defrag on volu 2012-12-18 13:2844 SUFS-DEFRAD: SUFS defrag completed 2012-12-18 13:2844 SUFS-DEFRAD: SUFS defrag completed 2012-12-18 13:2845 CVFS-CHECK: Started cvfsck on volume vol 2012-12-18 13:2845 CVFS-CHECK: Number of blocks processed f 2012-12-18 13:2145 CVFS-CHECK: Number of blocks processed f 2012-12-18 13:1145 CVFS-CHECK: Number of blocks processed f 2012-12-18 13:31:15 CVFS-CHECK: Number of blocks processed f			- 0 (33% complete) - 44806 (33% complete) - 12806 (33% complete) - 1206686 (43% complete) - 1276458 (34% complete) - 1554982 (35% complete)	

8 Click **Reboot** to finalize the secure shred process and reboot the DXi.

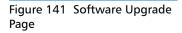
After the DXi finishes rebooting, you can resume normal system operation.

Software Upgrade

The **Software Upgrade** page allows you to upload a new software image to update the system software on the DXi V-Series.

Note: The system should be scheduled for downtime during a software upgrade.

To access the **Software Upgrade** page, click the **Utilities** menu, and then click the **Software Upgrade** tab (see <u>Figure 141</u>).



Quantum.		
Home	Diagnostics Analyzer Space Reclamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown	
Replication	Upload New DXI Software Image Help	
Status	Software Image File Browse	1
	Note: The software image file must end with extension .fw.	1
Alerts	Warning: Upload may take a few minutes and MUST NOT BE INTERRUPTED. Once you click on the Upload button, DO NOT CLICK on any hyperlinks, toolbar buttons, or menu items until the upload finished message appears.	1
Configuration	Upload	1
Utilities		
Wizards		
Мар		
DXI Advanced		
Reporting		

To upload a new system software image:

- 1 Make sure the following conditions are met before you continue:
 - All replication and backup jobs are completed (see <u>DXi V-Series</u> <u>Replication</u> on page 69).
 - All space reclamation tasks are completed without errors (see <u>Space Reclamation</u> on page 256).
 - All outstanding administration alerts are deleted (see <u>Admin</u> <u>Alerts</u> on page 115).
 - Healthchecks complete successfully without errors (see <u>Healthchecks</u> on page 249).

2 In the **Software Image File** box, type the location and filename of the new software image file.

Or click the **Browse** button to browse the system and locate the new software image. The software image file must end with the **.fw** extension.

3 Click Upload.

A Warning message displays.

4 Click **Start** to begin the upload process.

Do not close the window until the upload process is complete. An **Information** message displays stating the software image was uploaded successfully.

5 Click OK.

The Activate/Remove Software Image message displays (see Figure 142).

Figure 142 Activate/Remove Software Image

	Quantum.	DX: V1000 Normal Tue Dec 18 2012 - 1:21:17 PM PST Admin Ticket Low Capacity	Logout Administrator Heip	
		Diagnostics Analyzer Space Reclamation License Keys Security Software Upgrade Reboot & Shutdown		
	Home	Activate/Remove New DXi Software Image	Help	
	Replication	Activate/Remove Software Image		
	Status			
	Alerts	A new DXi software image has been uploaded. You must activate the image in order for the new software to become operational. Uploaded Image File: QTM-DXI0-upd-2.2.1 MC-8988-49574-Build3.fw		
Delete all Admin Alerts	Configuration			
before activating the	Utilities	Activate Remove		
software image	Wizards			
2	Мар			
	DXI Advanced Reporting			

6 Click Activate to activate the new software image.

Note: To remove the software image from the system instead of activating it, click **Remove**.

- A **Confirmation** message displays.
- 7 Click Yes.

A **Warning** message displays stating that activating the software will cause backup jobs to fail.

8 Click Yes.

An Information message displays stating that the system will restart.

The system automatically reboots two or more times during the software update process. Wait at least 15 minutes before attempting to log on to the system again.

Note: Clear your Web browser cache before logging on to the remote management console for the first time following the software upgrade. This will ensure the remote management console displays correctly.

Note: Following the software upgrade, the DXi V-Series will automatically contact the license server and install your product key and license. If the DXi V-Series does not have Internet access via HTTPS (port 443), it cannot contact the license server. In this case, you may not be able to ingest data until you have manually installed the product key and license. For more details, see <u>Dark Site Upgrade Licensing</u> on page 269.

Dark Site	Upgrade
Licensing	

If you upgrade the DXi V-Series from software version 2.1.1 without Internet access, you *must* manually install a product key and license after completing the upgrade. You can obtain the product key and license from Quantum Support.

To apply the product key, access the DXi V-Series command line interface (CLI) console and log in as the **cliadmin** user. The default password is **cliadmin**, but your DXi administrator may have changed it. For more information about using the CLI console, see the *DXi-Series Command Line Interface (CLI) Guide* (6-67081).

After logging on to the CLI console, type the following command and press **<Enter>**:

syscli --activate --productkey XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX

where XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX-XXXXX is your product key.

If you entered the command correctly, the system responds with the following message: Command completed successfully.

You can now add the license using the **Utilities > License Keys** page in the remote management console (see <u>Adding a License Key</u> on page 261).

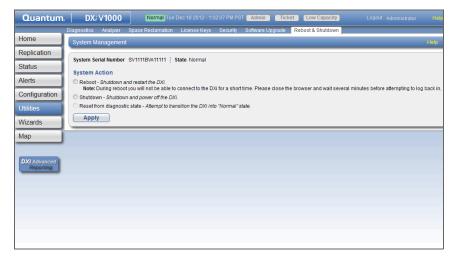
Reboot & Shutdown

The **Reboot & Shutdown** page allows you to reboot or shut down the DXi V-Series.

To access the **Reboot & Shutdown** page, click the **Utilities** menu, and then click the **Reboot & Shutdown** tab (see <u>Figure 143</u>).

Caution: Before shutting down the DXi V-Series, make sure that all backup and replication jobs are finished, and that space reclamation activity is complete.

Figure 143	Reboot &
Shutdown	Page



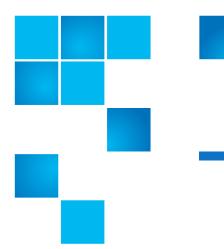
To reboot or shutdown the DXi V-Series:

- 1 Under System Action, select an option:
 - **Reboot** Reboots the DXi V-Series.

Rebooting the system closes the Web browser connection. You must log on again after the system has rebooted.

- Shutdown Shuts down the DXi V-Series.
- **Reset from diagnostic state** (Only available when the node is in degraded mode) Restarts the services on the node without rebooting the system.
- 2 Click Apply.
- 3 Close the browser window.
- **Note:** Shutting down the system can take up to 15 minutes. Only the node will completely shut down. When rebooting, the system can take approximately 30 minutes to start up, depending on the amount of installed storage capacity.

Chapter 9: DXi V-Series Utilities Reboot & Shutdown



Appendix A Troubleshooting

This appendix describes the status and problem reporting features of the DXi V-Series as well as problems you might encounter during setup and operation of the system. Corrective information is provided to help you resolve these problems.

For for information about troubleshooting the DXi V-Series, see the following sections:

- DXi V-Series Status and Problem Reporting
- <u>General Troubleshooting Actions</u>
- <u>Common Problems and Solutions</u>

DXi V-Series Status and Problem Reporting

To maintain system health and help you identify and correct problems that occur, the DXi V-Series constantly performs the following actions:

- Monitors the system software and hardware components.
- Detects system problems.
- Attempts to isolate each problem to a specific field replaceable component.

- Attempts to recover from the problem.
- Logs the problem.
- If the problem requires service, the system reports the problem in a service ticket associated with the field replaceable component.

General Troubleshooting Actions

For information about general troubleshoot actions you can take, see the following sections:

- <u>Viewing Service Tickets</u>
- Downloading a System Diagnostics File

Viewing Service Tickets

Service tickets include time and date information, status (open or closed), information about each error, and links to recommended troubleshooting procedures. The DXi V-Series generates service tickets according to the following scenarios:

- If the component associated with the problem does not have an open service ticket, the DXi V-Series opens a service ticket for the component and reports the problem in a service ticket.
- If the problem reoccurs, the DXi V-Series logs the number of times that it detects the problem in the existing report.
- If a different problem occurs with the same component, the DXi V-Series adds a new report to the same service ticket.
- If a problem occurs with a different component, the DXi V-Series uses the above scenario to open a new service ticket for the component or report the problem in an existing service ticket associated with the component.

To access the **Service Tickets** page, click the **Alerts** menu, and then click the **Service Tickets** tab.

For more information about working with service tickets, see <u>Service</u> <u>Tickets</u> on page 117. Downloading a System Diagnostics File The **System Diag File** page allows you to generate and download a system diagnostics file. This file contains the diagnostic logs for all of the system components.

To access the **System Diag File** page, on the **Diagnostics** page, click the **System Diag File** tab.

For information about downloading the system diagnostics file, see <u>System Diag File</u> on page 248.

Common Problems and Solutions

The troubleshooting information in this section covers the following topics:

- <u>Start-up Problems</u>
- <u>Ethernet Network Problems</u>
- Replication Problems

Start-up Problems

Table 1 describes problems that can occur during system start-up.

Table 1 Start-up Problems	Problem	Corrective Action
	FATAL ERROR Unable to start SNFS! Message displays.	Contact your Quantum Customer Support representative (see <u>Getting More</u> <u>Information or Help</u> on page xxii).
	FATAL ERROR Unable to start blockpool! Message displays.	Contact your Quantum Customer Support representative (see <u>Getting More</u> <u>Information or Help</u> on page xxii).

Ethernet Network Problems	<u>Table 2</u> describes correct Ethernet network.	<u>Table 2</u> describes corrective actions for problems occurring with the Ethernet network.		
Table 2 Ethernet Network Problems	Problem	Corrective Action		
	DXi V-Series system is not visible on the Ethernet network.	Try to ping the DXi V-Series system IP address from a host on the same network. If the ping reports round trip times, the DXi V-Series system is active. If not, check the cables, switches, or hubs for damaged components. If everything checks out, contact the Quantum Customer Support department (see <u>Getting More Information</u> <u>or Help</u> on page xxii).		
	DXi V-Series remote management pages are not visible.	IF you cannot connect to the DXi V-Series remote management pages, verify that the following network settings for the DXi V-Series are correct:		
		• Hostname		
		IP addresses		
		Default gateway		
		Subnet mask		
		Domain name (optional)		
	An Ethernet cable is removed during normal operation.	The system will discontinue use of the associated Ethernet port. A Service ticket will be issued. The possibility of errors exist; data corruption will not occur.		
		Reconnect the cable as soon as possible. It is not necessary to power the system off. Depending on the state of the system when the Ethernet cable was removed, replication, system management, or ingest may need to be restarted.		

Replication Problems

Table 3 describes corrective actions for problems occurring with the replication.

Table 3 Replication Problems	Problem	Explanation/Corrective Action
	The replication was paused, but the replication is still in process.	When you click Pause , the system will continue to replicate the current tag or block of information in process. The process of completing the current tag replication can take up to 15 minutes to complete. Once that tag has completed replication the system will pause and wait to resume.
	The replication was paused and a Failure event was generated in the Replication Events page.	This is normal. When a replication is paused, a failure event is generated on the Replication Events page. They system will continue the replication when you click Resume .
	Replication was disabled while a replication was in process and the replication completed.	If you click Disable during a replication in process, the system will complete the entire replication and then disable replication on the system. The system will be unable to replicate until you click Enable .
	Enabled replication on a NAS share and received the following Event: No destination host is specified for replication.	You must configure the target system prior to configuring the source. If the target system is not configured first, you will not be able to designate the replication target.
	Able to enable and schedule replication for NAS even though no target IP configured.	It is possible to enable and schedule a replication when a target system has not been configured. The replication will not start until a target system is configured.

Appendix A: Troubleshooting Common Problems and Solutions

Glossary

В	Blockp	bool A pool of all unique data blocks that were captured during the data deduplication cycle. When backup jobs occur, the data deduplication engine searches for new data entering the DXi V-Series and uses a variable length compression type algorithm to compare this to existing data in the blockpool. Unique blocks are added to the blockpool and all known blocks are indexed.
	Byte	The basic unit of computer memory which is large enough to hold one character.
c	Comp	ress A process of removing fine-grained redundancy from data prior to storing or transmitting it. The granularity may vary, but generally compression deals with redundancy in grains of a few bytes.
D	Data I	Deduplication A process of removing coarse-grained redundancy from data prior to storing or transmitting it. The granularity may vary, but generally data deduplication deals with redundancy in grains of several kilobytes. When you select Enable Data Deduplication for a NAS share, data deduplication is running all of the time. Backup data is sent to

	Disk	the DXi V-Series and data deduplication is performed on data as it is ingested. A fixed set of sectors with sequential numbers starting from zero, directly and independently accessible and mutable by those numbers without affecting any other sector.
F	Filesys	tem An abstraction layered over storage devices (typically disks) obscuring the physical details of the storage devices it supports in favor of a presentation oriented at storing and organizing files.
Н	Host	The device or devices to which the system is connected.
I	Ingest	The throughput performance of data writes to the system.
L	LSU	Logical Storage Unit. A logical storage entity defined under the Symantec OpenStorage API.
Ν	NAS	Network Attached Storage is file-level computer data storage connected to a computer network providing data access to network clients.
	NDMP	Network Data Management Protocol is a protocol meant to transport data between NAS devices, also known as filers, and backup devices. This removes the need for transporting the data through the backup server itself, thus enhancing speed and removing load from the backup server.
0	OST	OpenStorage API. An interface specific to Symantec NetBackup and Backup Exec for writing data to disk backup appliances, replicating it, and, in the case of NetBackup, writing data directly to disk, under control of the backup application.

R	RAID	Redundant Array of Independent Disks is a technology through which several physical storage disks are grouped into an array that appears to an operating system as one or more physical devices.
S	SNFS	StorNext [®] File System
	SNMP	Short for <i>Simple Network Management Protocol</i> , a set of protocols for managing complex networks.
	Sync II	When you configure a share for Directory/File Based Replication, you specify a Sync ID for the share. The Sync ID associates the share on the source system with the share on the target system that will received the replicated data. The Sync ID of the source share and the target share <i>must</i> be identical.

т

R

Terabyte A unit of measure for digital data equal to 1,000 gigabytes.

Glossary